This volume was donated to LLMC
to enrich its on-line offerings and
for purposes of long-term preservation by

Hawai'i Pacific University

AN AUTHENTIC

NARRATIVE

OF A

VOYAGE

PERFORMED BY

Captain COOK and Captain CLERKE,

IN HIS MAJESTY'S SHIPS

RESOLUTION AND DISCOVERY,

During the Years 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, and 1780.

AN AUTHENTIC

NARRATIVE

OF A

VOYAGE

PERFORMED BY

Captain COOK and Captain CLERKE,

IN HIS MAJESTY'S SHIPS

RESOLUTION AND DISCOVERY,

During the Years 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, and 1780;

IN SEARCH OF A

NORTH-WEST PASSAGE

Between the Continents of Asia and America.

INCLUDING

A faithful Account of all their Discoveries, and the
unfortunate Death of Captain COOK.

ILLUSTRATED WITH

A CHART and a Variety of CUTS.

By W. ELLIS,

ASSISTANT SURGEON TO BOTH VESSELS.

THE SECOND EDITION.

VOL. I.

LONDON,
Printed for G. Robinson, Pater-noſter Row; J. Sewell,
Cornhill; and J. Debrett, Piccadilly.
MDCCLXXXIII.

CONTENTS.

CHAP. I.

THE ſhips put in commiſſion—fall down to Long Reach—proceed to Plymouth—the Reſolution ſails for the Cape of Good Hope—the Diſcovery follows ſome time after her arrival there—both ſhips leave the Cape, and proceed to the ſouthward—diſcover Marions Iſles—and the iſland of Deſolation—proceedings there, and departure—ſome account of the iſland. 1

CHAP. II.

The ſhips proceed to Van-Diemen's Land—arrival in Adventure Bay—meet with no good water—catch plenty of fiſh—parties ſent to cut wood—ſome of the natives make their appearance—deſcription of them—are frightened by the diſcharge of a muſquet, and run into the woods—pay us another viſit—a farther deſcription of them, and of Adventure Bay. 14

CHAP. III.

Departure from Van-Diemen's Land—arrival at New Zealand—ſome of the natives venture along-ſide—appear ſuſpicious and diſtruſtful—the tents erected on ſhore—brew ſpruce-beer—filthineſs of the New Zealanders—Tiu-arrooa's attachment to Captain Cook and Omai—Kihoorah, the chief, who killed

the unfortunate Mr. Rowe, viſits the ſhips; is diſliked by his countrymen—the Diſcovery drags her anchor in a ſquall—preparations for leaving New Zealand—Tiu-arrooa and another boy beg to accompany Omai—the mother of the former inconſolable—our departure. 24

CHAP. IV.

Paſs through Cook's Straits—diſcover an iſland—affords a pleaſing proſpect—are ſeen by the natives—two of them come off in a canoe—the boats ſent to look for a landing-place—but return without ſucceſs—ſome account of the natives—leave the iſland—diſcover two more—the natives very readily come on board—deſcription of them—the arrival of a chief—he enters into a league of friendſhip with us—our boats ſent on ſhore, attended by a number of canoes—the king of the iſland ſends Captain Clerke a pig and ſome cocoa-nuts—the return of the boats—are not able to land—the ſhips ſtand off and on for the night. 31

CHAP. V.

The boats again ſent on ſhore—they return without any ſupply—the behaviour of the King—promiſes them proviſions, but deceives them—Omai finds five of his countrymen—leave Watieu and proceed to the Small Iſland—procure a ſtock of graſs for the cattle and ſome cocoa-nuts—arrive at Harvey's Iſland—deſcription of the natives—are great thieves—the boats ſent to open a trade with them—but return without ſucceſs—Captain Cook determines to proceed to the Friendly Iſles, by way of Palmerſton's Iſle—and bears away accordingly. 42

CHAP. VI.

Hot ſultry weather with thunder and lightning—arrive at Palmerſton's Iſland—find no anchorage for the ſhips—the boats ſent on ſhore—account of this iſland—inhabited by numerous flocks of birds—the reef affords excellent fiſh—particularly large eels—deſcription of them—many ſharks—find part of a canoe, and a piece of plank upon the beach—paſs Savage Iſland—and deſcry the Friendly Iſles—anchor off Anamooka. 50

CHAP. VII.

Captain Cook's order relative to trade—the tents erected, and markets held on ſhore—the Diſcovery parts her ſmall bower cable—the arrival of Feenow—the Diſcovery parts her beſt bower cable—Captain Cook accompanies Feenow to Happi with the ſhips—receives great civilities there—is entertained with boxing and wreſtling matches and dances—departs from Happi—the paſſage to Anamooka very dangerous—arrival of Powlabow—who proves to be the king—ſtrictures on Feenow's conduct—Powlabow viſits the ſhips—Feenow arrives and pays him homage. 58

CHAP. VIII.

The ſhips leave Anamooka—the paſſage to Amſterdam dangerous on account of the rocks—arrival there—

are informed that Malla-wagga is King—the Captains viſit him, but are diſappointed—Malla-wagga pays homage to Powlahow—the captains accompany Powlahow to Moa, to be preſent at a ceremony called Anache—account of that ceremony—arrival at Middleburgh—departure for Otaheitee. 70

CHAP. IX.

Account of the Friendly Iſlands—produce—animals—deſcription of the natives—dreſs—houſes—food—cookery—amuſements—manufactures—canoes—burial places—funeral ceremonies—form of government—weapons. 85

CHAP. X.

Leave the Friendly Iſles—the Diſcovery carries away her main-top-maſt in a ſquall—diſcover an iſland—ſome of the natives put off—a ſhort deſcription of them and the iſland—continue our courſe to Otaheitee—and anchor in Ohitapeah harbour—receive intelligence of the Spaniards having been there—who had erected a houſe and croſs on ſhore—leave three of their people there, and depart for Lima—they return, and after a ſhort ſtay take away thoſe they had left—and again depart for Lima—Orette, the friend of M. Bougainville, viſits us—ſome account of the place—the Morai of Wyeatuah—ungenerous behaviour of the Spaniards reſpecting us—leave Ohitapeah, and arrive at Matava Bay—Otoo viſits the captains. 119

CHAP. XI.

Omai finds his ſiſter married—her huſband's behaviour—he is led into temptation, and turned out of the ſhip—the natives very ingenious at fabricating ſtories—an inſtance of it—the people of Otaheitee engaged in a war with thoſe of Imaio—the cauſe of that war—a human ſacrifice is offered to the god of war by Tohaw—ſome deſcription of the place of ſacrifice—Tohaw and his friends Potatow and Tapaow, ſail for Imaio—Otoo's behaviour—is threatened by Tohaw—we ſail for Imaio—the natives ſteal two of our goats—arrival at Huaheine—loſe one of our quadrants—the thief taken—threatens Omai, and is again confined but makes his eſcape—arrival at Uriatea—two of our people leave the ſhips—are at length taken—leave Uriatea, and ſteer for Bora bora—ſome account of the ſociety of Arreois. 135

CHAP. XII.

Depart from the Society Iſles—diſcover a low ſandy iſland—catch many fiſh and turtle—nearly loſe two of the Diſcovery's men—leave the iſland—deſcription of it—amazing flocks of birds—proceed to the northward—ſee more land—anchor off A'toui, one of the Sandwich Iſles—proceedings there—the Reſolution drags her anchor, and ſtands out to ſea—the king and queen viſit Captain Clerke—the Diſcovery ſails—both ſhips anchor off Oneehow, another of the Sandwich Iſles—tranſactions there—ſome account of thoſe iſlands. 162

CHAP. XIII.

We depart for the northward—fall in with the north-weſt coaſt of America—trace the coaſt as well as the wind and weather permit—are put to an allowance of water—diſcover King George's Sound—where we anchor—the natives viſit us—account of them, and of our tranſactions there—departure from King George's Sound. 180

CHAP. XIV.

Account of King George's Sound—produce—animals—inhabitants — temper — dreſs — houſes—food—cookery — manufactures — canoes—fiſhing-tackle — weapons—language. 209

CHAP. XV.

Departure from King George's Sound—the Reſolution ſprings a leak—experience much blowing-weather—continue to trace the coaſt—Captain Cook goes on ſhore—we diſcover Sandwich Sound—and anchor there—ſome of the Americans make their appearance—deſcription of them—weigh our anchors and ſtand on, but the weather proving bad, are at night obliged to let them go again—more of the natives viſit us, but behave inſolently—account of them—proceed through the Sound—ſome account of it. 230

CHAP. XVI.

Leave Sandwich Sound, and continue to trace the coaſt—diſcover the river Turn-again—tranſactions during

ing our courſe up and down the river—occurrences during our run along the coaſt till our arrival in Providence Bay. 249

CHAP. XVII.

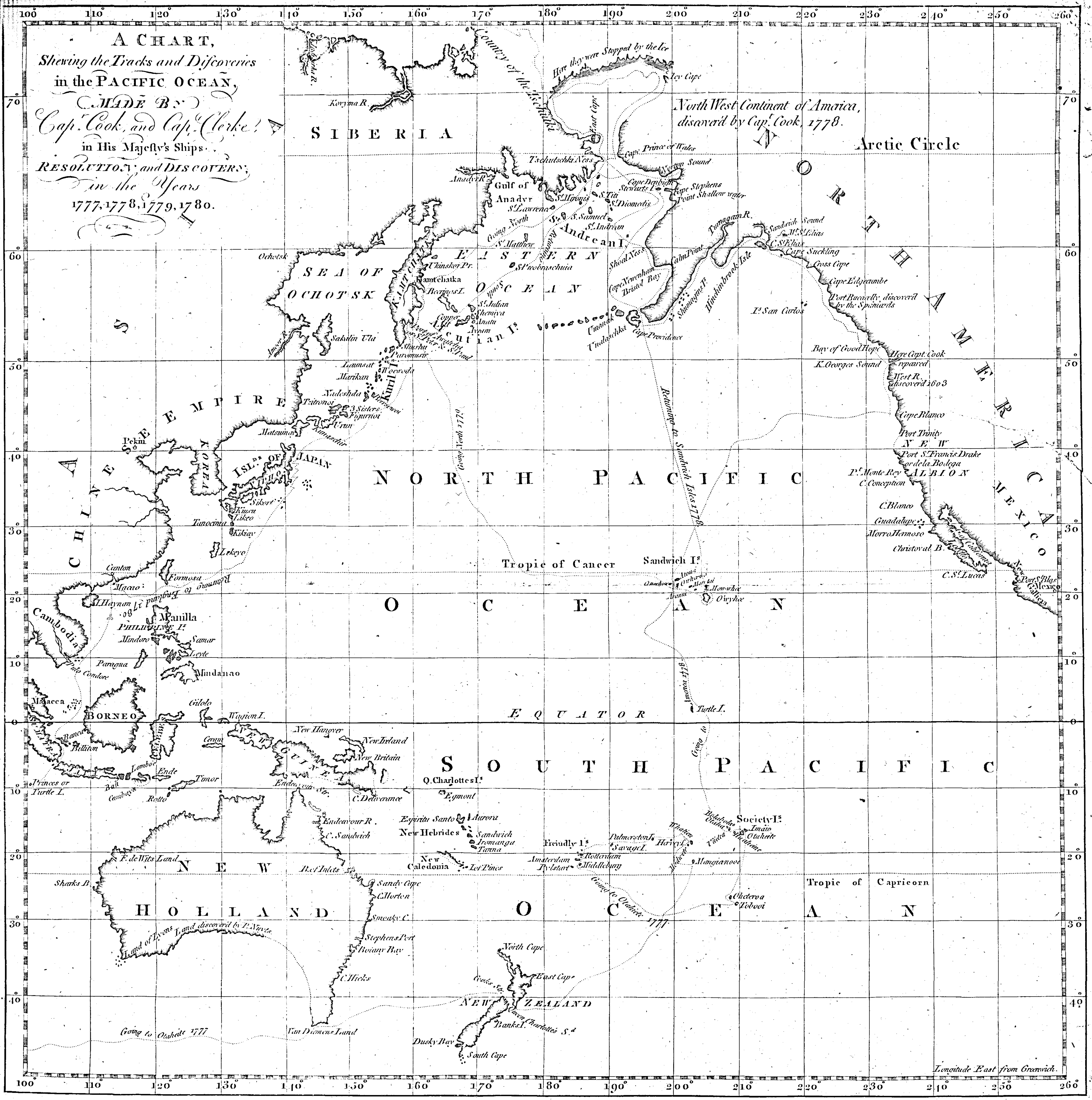
Tranſactions and occurrences at the iſland of Unalaſchka—we depart from thence, and continue to trace the coaſt. 281

CHAP. XVIII.

Tranſactions till our departure from the Tſchutſchi Noſs. 310

CHAP. XIX.

Direct our courſe to the American ſhore—fall in with the ice—numerous herds of ſea-horſes, or morſe, upon it—ſee land, which Captain Cook denominates Icy Cape—trace the ice—diſcover the Aſiatic continent, which we continue to trace till we again arrive at the Tſchutſchi Noſs. 335



A CHART,
Shewing the Tracks and Diſcoveries
in the PACIFIC OCEAN,
MADE BY
Capt. Cook, and Capt. Clerke!
in His Majeſty's Ships
RESOLUTION and DISCOVERY;
in the Years
1777, 1778, 1779, 1780.

100° 110° 120° 130° 140° 150° 160° 170° 180° 190° 200° 210° 220° 230° 240° 250° 260°
70 60 50 40 30 20 10 0
SIBERIA
Country of the Tschutski
Here they were Stopped by the Ice
Icy Cape
East Cape
Koryma R.
North West Continent of America, discover'd by Capt. Cook, 1778.
Arctic Circle
NORTH AMERICA
Cape Prince of Wales
Tschutschki Ness
Norton Sound
Cape Denbigh
Stewarts
Cape Stephens
Point Shallow water
Anadyr R.
Gulf of Anadyr
St. Lawrence
St. Maronis
St. Titi
St. Diomedis
S. Samuel
St. Andrean
Andrean I.
Going North
Returning
St. Matthew
Shoal Ness
Calm Point
Tumagain R.
Sandwich Sound
Mt. St. Elias
C. St. Elias
Cape Suckling
Cross Cape
Cape Edgecumbe
Port Bucarelly, discover'd by the Spaniards
Hinchinbrook Isle
Shumagins Is.
Cape Newenham
Bristol Bay
Is. San Carlos
Ochotsk
SEA OF OCHOTSK
KAMTCHATKA
Kamtchatka
Ukinskoi Pr.
Berings I.
EASTERN OCEAN
St. Prebruschaia
St. Julian
Shemiya
Anatta
Avam
Copper I.
Atta
Aleutian Is.
Umanak
Unalaschka
Cape Providence
Port of St. Peter & St. Paul
Shashu
Paramusir
Sakalin Ula
Amoor R.
Lamsat
Marikan
Woorosa
Kurile Is.
Nadeshda
Tsitronoi
3 Sisters
Figurnoi
Urup
Matsumai
Kunaschir
CHINESE EMPIRE
ASIA
Pekin
KOREA
ISLES OF JAPAN
NIPHON
Sikoff
Kiusiu
Lakeo
Tanecima
Kikiay
Lekeyo
Canton
Macao
Formosa
Returning to England 1780
I. Haynan
Cambodia
Manilla
PHILIPPINE Is.
Mindoro
Samar
Leyte
Paragua
Mindanao
Pulo Condore
Malacca
BORNEO
Gilolo
Wagion I.
Banca
Billiton
Sumatra
Ceram
Celebes
NEW GUINEA
New Hanover
New Ireland
New Britain
Lombock
Ende
Timor
Bali
Java
Princes or Turtle I.
Cumbava
Rotto
Endeavour Str.
C. Deliverance
Q. Charlotte's Is.
Egmont
Endeavour R.
C. Sandwich
Espiritu Santo
Aurora
New Hebrides
Sandwich
Iromanga
Tanna
New Caledonia
I. of Pines
Friendly Is.
Amsterdam
Pylstart
Rotterdam
Middleburg
Palmerston I.
Savage I.
Hervey I.
Whatiou
Mangianooe
Society Is.
Bolabola
Otaha
Ulitea
Huaheine
Imaio
Otaheite
Oheterooa
Toboai
Going to Otaheite 1777
NEW HOLLAND
F. de Wits Land
Sharks B.
Land of Lyons
Land discover'd by P. Nuyts
Bd. Inlets
Sandy Cape
C. Morton
Smoaky C.
Stephens Port
Botany Bay
C. Hicks
Van Diemens Land
Going to Otaheite 1777
NEW ZEALAND
North Cape
East Cape
Cooks Str.
Queen Charlotte's Sd.
Banks I.
Dusky Bay
South Cape
NORTH PACIFIC OCEAN
SOUTH PACIFIC OCEAN
Tropic of Cancer
Tropic of Capricorn
EQUATOR
Going North 1778
Returning to Sandwich Isles 1778
Going to Amer. 1778
Going to
Sandwich Is.
Oneeheow
Atowi
Owhroa
Morotai
Mowwhee
Owyhee
Ranai
Turtle I.
Here Capt. Cook repaired
Bay of Good Hope
K. Georges Sound
West R. discover'd 1603
Cape Blanco
Port Trinity
NEW ALBION
Port St. Francis Drake or de la Bodega
Pt. Monte Rey
C. Conception
C. Blanco
Guadalupe
Morro Hermoso
Christoval B.
California
C. St. Lucas
MEXICO
Port St. Blas
Mexico
Galicia
Longitude East from Greenwich.

Mr. Smith sculpt. Bow Lane

CHAP. I.

The ſhips put in commiſſion—fall down to Long Reach—proceed to Plymouth—the Reſolution ſails for the Cape of Good Hope—the Diſcovery follows ſome time after her arrival there—both ſhips leave the Cape, and proceed to the ſouthward—diſcover Marion's iſles—and the iſland of Deſolation—proceedings there, and departure—ſome account of the iſland.

ON February 14th, 1776, the Reſolution and Diſcovery were put in commiſſion, and the pendants hoiſted. After undergoing a thorough repair, &c. in the dry dock, they were moored along ſide the hulk, and continued in that ſituation, taking in the neceſſary ſtores, till the 12th of May, when the Diſcovery fell down to Galleons. Some days after the Reſolution followed, and anchored in Long Reach, and the Diſcovery having received her gunner's ſtores on board, proceeded to the ſame place, and after a ſhort ſtay, both veſſells fell down to the Nore, where the Reſolution remained. The Diſcovery had orders to make the beſt of her way to Plymouth, but contrary winds having obliged her to put into Portland, it was near a week before ſhe arrived there.

About a fortnight after, the Reſolution anchored in the Sound. From this time to July 12th, every body was aſſiduouſly employed in completing her ſtock, when, in the afternoon of the ſame day, ſhe weighed, and made ſail for the Cape of Good Hope. The Diſcovery was equally prepared for ſea; but Captain Clerke's affairs detained him in town a conſiderable time after, and he did not arrive in Plymouth till the firſt of Auguſt.

In the afternoon ſhe got up her anchor, and made ſail likewiſe for the Cape. On the 7th in the morning, they ſaw Cape Finiſterre, bearing S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. diſtant five or ſix leagues, and in the afternoon of the 13th ſaw Porto Sancto, and the next day Madeira. On the 26th and 27th, paſſed the iſlands Sal, St. Nicholas, and Bonaviſta, and early the next morning ſtood in for Porto Praya bay, as Captain Clerke was not without hopes of finding the Reſolution there.

They now ſoon loſt the N. E. trade wind, it ſhifting to the S. W. but upon approaching the equinoctial, it gradually veered round to the S. E. September 24th, in the evening, the corporal of marines fell overboard and was drowned. October 31ſt, about two in the afternoon, they ſaw the appearance of land, which from its bearings, &c. they ſtrongly ſuſpected was the Table Hill, or ſome of the high land near it; but the next day a heavy gale of wind aroſe from the S. E. and continued to blow with great violence, till the 8th of November, when it became more moderate, and ſhifted to the S. W. The next morning, to their great joy, they ſaw the Table Hill bearing E. by S. and at 11 at night, having very light airs, anchored, but immediately after a heavy ſquall from the ſouthward came on, and drove the Diſcovery, in ſpight of her anchor, towards Penguin Iſland, which circumſtance obliged her to weigh it again and make ſail. At one in the morning, having ſtood over to the S. E. ſide of the bay, ſhe came to, and at ſix weighed; and with the aſſiſtance of her boats got ſafe in about nine, when ſhe ſaluted the fort with thirteen guns, which was returned with an equal number, and the Reſolution, overjoyed at ſeeing her long expected conſort, ſaluted with nine guns.

The daily occurrences at the Cape were ſo little intereſting and entertaining (being nothing more than refitting the ſhips, repairing the rigging, receiving on board ſtores and proviſions) as not to require a relation of them; it therefore will be only neceſſary to ſay, that by the 30th of November, both veſſels were ready for ſea.

The next day (December 1ſt) at five in the afternoon, we weighed and made ſail; and having ſaluted the fort, ſtood out of Table Bay. When clear of the land, we ſteered a S. S. E. and S. E. courſe, it being Captain Cook's intention to aſcertain the reality of ſome land to the ſouthward, which was ſaid to be diſcovered by Monſieur Kerguelen, and which he had in vain ſought for in his laſt voyage. The French charts were unluckily incorrect, for the Reſolution, in her tract, paſſed over the very ſpot where it was ſaid to exiſt.

As we approached the ſouthern parts, we by degrees found great alteration in the weather, which now became very cold, with thick fogs, rain, and ſtrong gales of wind, and coughs and colds were general in both ſhips. On the 16th we deſcried land, which, upon a nearer view, proved to be two ſmall iſlands, affording at a diſtance a rocky, barren, and dreary proſpect, and almoſt ſurrounded with fogs; the more lofty parts were covered with ſnow. Upon a nearer view, we ſaw a few trees upon the low ground, but they were thinly ſcattered.

Theſe, which were called Prince Edward's Iſles, with three or four others farther to the eaſtward, were firſt diſcovered by Monſieur Marion in 1774 and 1775. The eaſtern ones lies in latitude 46 deg. 35 min. ſouth, and longitude 37 deg. 51 min. eaſt; the weſtern one 46 deg. 54 min. ſouth latitude, and 37 deg. 39 min. eaſt longitude.

We paſſed between them, and continued our courſe, and on the 24th at four in the morning again ſaw land, which proved to be that we were in queſt of. Our obſerved latitude at noon was 48 deg. 24 min. ſouth, and longitude 68 deg. 30 min. eaſt. At three in the afternoon, we diſcovered more land to the ſouthward, which was a continuation of the former. We now directed our courſe immediately for it, and at eight in the evening anchored in a ſmall bay, about half a mile from ſhore. The rocks were almoſt covered with penguins, and numbers of ſhags flew round us. Captain Cook immediately ordered out one of the boats, to ſee if they could diſcover a convenient watering-place, and to make likewiſe ſome obſervations upon the produce of the place. She returned about an hour after, and the officer who went in her informed the captain, that there was a ſecure harbour, and that water might be procured from a fine ſtream with very little trouble. He farther told him, that there were numbers of ſeals, ſea-bears, and penguins, and brought off ſeveral of the latter, as a proof of his aſſertion. This account induced the captain to ſtay a day or two; and early the next morning (the 25th) the anchors were weighed. The wind being directly againſt us, we were reduced to the neceſſity of ſtanding ſome way out to ſea, that we might have a greater ſcope to work to windward.

The Reſolution ſucceeded very well;

but the Diſcovery being a good way out, it became for a time almoſt calm, which prevented her from getting in till near three in the afternoon, when ſhe dropped her anchor in twelve fathom water, the bottom muddy. When moored, the ſouthernmoſt point of the harbour bore S. E. ½ S.; the N. E. point E. by S. and the head of the harbour N. W. by W. our diſtance from ſhore about a quarter of a mile. The entrance, and indeed the harbour itſelf being very narrow, we were obliged to tack every minute.

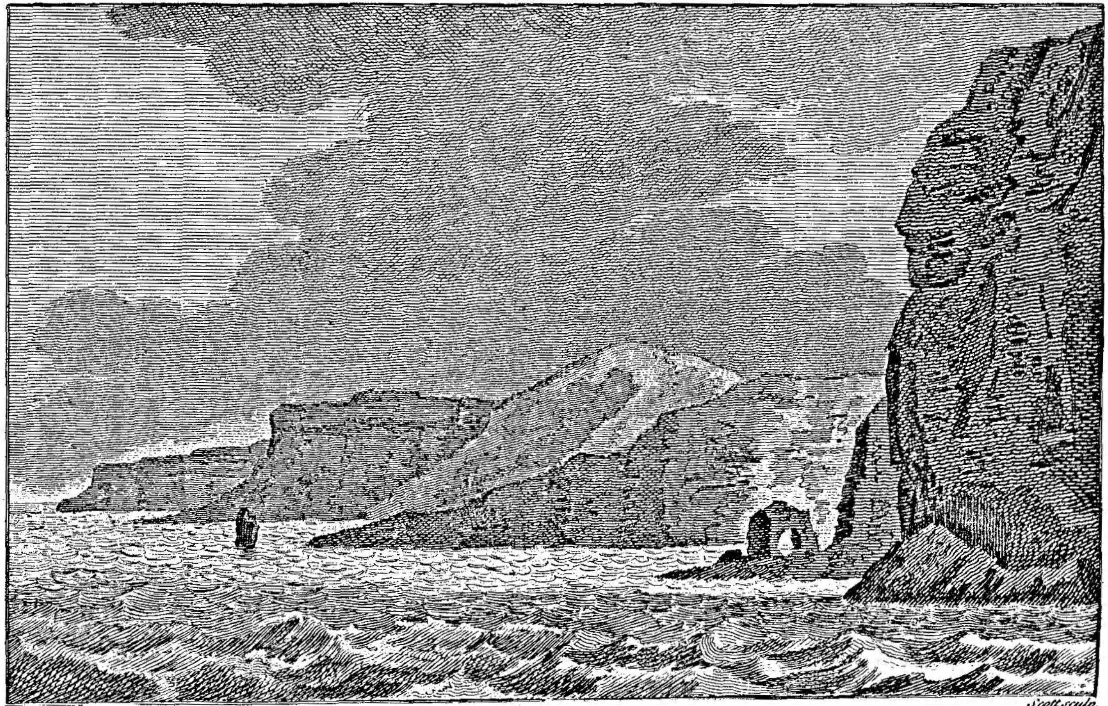
As this place afforded a retreat for ſeals and ſea-bears, the captain determined to embrace the opportunity of ſupplying the ſhips with blubber, which we might afterwards convert to oil at our leiſure. This plan we found of the greateſt uſe to us in the courſe of our voyage, as our ſtock would otherwiſe have been quite exhauſted.

The next day (the 26th) parties were ſent out for this purpoſe, and in the ſpace of five or ſix hours had filled all the hogſheads we could ſpare. Some of our men brought ſeveral of the hearts of theſe animals on board, and a few declared them to be nearly as good eating as that of a bullock; but, in fact, we had not as yet experienced hungry bellies enough to induce us to reliſh them. On the 27th, we celebrated Chriſtmas day, when the ſailors had double allowance of grog. The next day (28th) we filled our water caſks, and brought off a load or two of long coarſe graſs, which grew upon ſome low marſhy ground at the head of the harbour, for our ſtock. Soon after all thoſe animals which had eaten of it began to diſcover evident ſymptoms of pain and uneaſineſs, and ſome of their bodies became tenſe and ſwelled; in ſhort, ſeveral of them died. Captain Cook, alarmed at this, ordered every particle to be thrown away, concluding that ſomething poiſonous had been brought on board with it; but upon inveſtigating the matter more cloſely, it was found that our people had cut it upon a ſpot where a great number of penguins had been ſitting, and that a conſiderable quantity of their dung had been included in it. This was immediately pronounced to be the cauſe of their death, and ſeveral ſimilar inſtances were related of cattle in England dying in conſequence of eating graſs on which ducks and geeſe had dunged. On the morning of the 29th we got under way, and proceeded along the eaſtern coaſt of this iſland, which is moderately low and even, and affords to appearance ſeveral very good harbours. Upon the approach of evening, the commodore made the Diſcovery's ſignal to take the lead, and look out for a proper place to anchor in for the night, and ſuch a one being found, we anchored in ſixteen fathom, muddy bottom, about a quarter of a mile from ſhore.

In this day's run, we were not without our apprehenſions; being obliged to paſs through many extenſive fields (if I may be allowed the expreſſion) of ſea weed, (*fucus gigartinus*, Lin.) and as they generally indicate a rocky neighbourhood, we were fearful of meeting with ſome of thoſe dangerous obſtructions.

The ſhips were no ſooner ſecured than Captain Cook ordered out the pinnace, and went on ſhore on the eaſtern ſide; while the Diſcovery's ſmall cutter, with the maſter, was ſent to a ſmall iſland to the weſtward, to take the bearings and diſtances of the different remarkable points of land. The ſeals and ſea-bears were more numerous than at the laſt place, and ſome of them much larger. The next morning (the 30th) we weighed, and made ſail, and after coaſting ſome time, in order to aſcertain the extent of the land, we ſtood to the eaſtward, ſhaping our courſe for Van Diemen's Land.

This iſland was firſt diſcovered by Monſieur Kerguelen. Chriſtmas-harbour (which was that part of it where we firſt landed, and which was ſo called in remembrance of Chriſtmas day) lies nearly in latitude 48 deg. 41 min. ſouth, and in longitude 68 deg. 52 min. eaſt. It is eaſily to be know by a remarkable pierced rock on its eaſtern ſide, which is like the gateway of ſome old caſtle. The harbour is very ſecure, and is ſurrounded by high land. If we may judge of the general produce of this place, from what we ſaw of it at Chriſtmas Harbour, it is certainly as rocky, barren, and deſolate an iſland as can well be conceived, which induced Captain Cook to call it the Iſland of Deſolation. It does not afford a ſingle ſhrub, and is covered, in ſome few ſpots only, with moſs and four or five ſpecies of plants, among which is one ſomething reſembling a cabbage in its appearance. Its inhabitants are ſeals, ſea-bears, penguins *(alca, cirrhata aptenodytes antarctica)*, gulls, Port Egmont hens *(larus cattaractes)*, quaker birds



W. Ellis del.

Scott sculp.

A View of the Island of Desolation

(procellaria aquila), petrels *(procellaria capenſis, vittata)*, terns, ſhags, ducks, and a white bird about the ſize of a grouſe, which we called a ſnow bird. Its beak is ſtrong and black, with a hollow protuberance at the baſe, ſomething like that of a petril; it has four toes; its feet are of a fleſh colour. At the baſe of the wing is a black, hard, round knob, which projects about a quarter of an inch; its eyes are ſurrounded with a kind of membrane which appears as if corrugated, and is alſo of a fleſh colour.

We found this a well flavoured bird, which circumſtance, with the great plenty of ducks and ſhags, induced our ſportſmen to be out pretty often, but at laſt they became ſhy, and almoſt quitted the ſpot. The eaſtern part of this iſland affords the ſame barren aſpect as Chriſtmas Harbour, and in ſhort the whole is an aſſemblage of huge rocky matter, only calculated for the reſidence of ſuch half-formed animals as ſeals and ſea-bears. The thermometer was from 34 to 36, and once 50 degrees.

CHAP. II.

The ſhips proceed to Van-Diemen's land—arrival in Adventure Bay—meet with no good water—catch plenty of fiſh—parties ſent to cut wood—ſome of the natives make their appearance—deſcription of them—are frightened by the diſcharge of a muſquet, and run into the woods—pay us another viſit—a farther deſcription of them, and of Adventure Bay.

OUR courſe from the Iſland of Deſolation, was nearly E. by N. and E. N. E. The weather after a few days run, became more moderate and warm, the thermometer riſing to 50, and 55. The wind proved tolerably ſteady, tho' now and then a ſquall uſed us rather roughly, in one of which the Reſolution carried away her fore-top-maſt and main-top-gallant-maſt. We continued ſtanding on, in daily expectation of ſeeing the land, and on January 23d, 1777, were by our obſervations within a few leagues of it; but the weather being hazy, we ſaw nothing till the next day, Friday 24th, in the morning, when we deſcried part of New Holland, bearing N. by W. diſtant about nine leagues. We traced the coaſt, paſſing Storm Bay and the Fluted Cape, till the 27th, and at two in the afternoon the Diſcovery anchored in Adventure Bay in 13 fathom of water, ſandy bottom. The Reſolution at this time was in the offing, and did not arrive till paſt four. The bearings on board the Diſcovery when moored, were as follows: Penguin Iſland N. 74 E. diſtant a mile and half; Cape Frederick Henry N. 25 E. and the watering place N. 77 W. diſtant from the neareſt ſhore about a mile.

Soon after, the Commodore went on

ſhore to fix upon a proper place for erecting the Aſtronomers Tents, and likewiſe to look for a convenient ſpot for wooding and watering. In the two former he ſucceeded very well, but in the latter, by no means to his mind, every run of water (at leaſt every one that would have ſuited our purpoſe) proving brackiſh. Our people on board were alſo employed in catching fiſh, with which this Bay abounds, particularly very large rays, which afforded them excellent ſport, and a variety of other fiſh. The next morning (28th) parties were ſent out to wood and water, and as fiſh were ſo plentiful, another gang of hands were diſpatched to haul the ſean. Several of the gentlemen likewiſe made excurſions into the woods in ſearch of game. We obſerved from the ſhips many ſmokes in different parts, and ſome at no great diſtance, but ſaw none of the natives till the evening, when about 20 of them came to the wooding place, and ſeveral others to our watering party. They were entirely naked, and ſome had a kind of bludgeon in their hands, about three feet long, which, upon their approaching our wooders, they threw down, and made ſigns for them to lay aſide their hatchets, &c. which was complied with. They then came near, and examined our ſaws, and other different tools; but what ſurpriſed them moſt, was our cloathing, which they at firſt thought was part of our body. They were below the middle ſize, of a dark brown colour, and not ill made.—The party with our waterers, paid a deal of attention to what they were employed about, and examined the caſks with ſome nicety; but the boat, which lay at ſome little diſtance from the ſhore, attracted their notice more particularly, and ſome of them got hold of the rope and were hauling it on ſhore. The officer who attended, made ſigns for them to deſiſt; but they diſregarding him, he fired a muſquet over their heads, which ſudden and unexpected noiſe ſo alarmed them, that every ſoul, as well thoſe who were with the wooders as waterers, clapped their hands upon their heads, and ran off with the greateſt expedition. Our fiſhermen were very lucky, and brought off a variety of fiſh, amongſt which were ſome of the largeſt rays we ever ſaw, and a very uncommon looking fiſh, which we called an elephant-fiſh (*chimæra callorynchus*, Lin.) The ſhooting party were not ſo fortunate: birds of all kinds were very ſhy, particularly the ſhags and ducks.

Early the next morning (29th) our parties were employed on ſhore, as before; but the water proving very bad, upon trial, the Commodore thought it moſt prudent to relinquiſh his ſcheme of ſtaying there any longer, and accordingly gave orders for every thing to be brought on board. Whilſt our people were employed in getting off the Aſtronomers tents, and various other matters, the natives again paid us a viſit. We now had a better opportunity of making our remarks than before.

Their colour, as has been before obſerved, was dark brown: their hair (which was ſhort and woolly) and beard were formed into ſmall diſtinct lumps, with a mixture of reddiſh brown earth, and ſome kind of liquid, which appeared to be of an oily nature: this mode of dreſſing their hair gave them an uncommon appearance. The man who ſeemed to be the principal among them, had his face entirely painted with this compoſition. Their teeth were in general bad, their noſes flat, lips thick, foreheads low, but their eyes were dark brown and lively. Their arms and breaſts were marked with lines running in various directions, but totally different from any we had ever ſeen before, the fleſh being elevated or raiſed up as it were in little ridges. Round the necks of ſome of them was a kind of cord, about the thickneſs of our whip cord, very ſtrong, and twiſted in the ſame manner as our's, conſiſting of three ſmaller cords. They were rather averſe to parting with theſe. Their women were very plain; their heads ſhaved quite cloſe, except a very narrow circle of hair, which quite ſurrounded it. Some of them had the ſkin of ſome animal thrown over the ſhoulders, and faſtened before, which ſeemed to be merely for the convenience of carrying their children, two or three of which they had with them. Thoſe who had no children, were without this, or any other covering. They readily accepted of every thing that was offered them, but ſet no particular value upon any thing. Their language was entirely new to us, and they ſeemed to ſpeak very faſt. When any thing pleaſed them, they always expreſſed their ſatisfaction by a ſhout. Having got all our things to the boats, we took leave of our new friends, and departed for the ſhips.

We weighed our anchors the next

morning (30th) and ſtood out of the Bay. At noon Penguin Iſle bore S. E. diſtant a mile and half, and Cape Frederick Henry N. by W.

Adventure Bay (ſo called laſt Voyage by Captain Furneaux of the Adventure) lies in lat. 43 deg. 14 min. S. and long. 147 deg. 28 min. E.

The land ſurrounding it is moderately high, and covered with variety of trees to the very top. They are in general tall and ſtraight; ſome afford an agreeable ſpice, and others abound with gums. The under-wood is ſo thick as almoſt to render travelling impracticable in the valleys; between the hills are fine lagoons, where are found ſhags and ducks, but very ſhy and not plentiful: this circumſtance induced us to believe that the natives frequently moleſt them. In all our excurſions, we ſaw not one tree that had the leaſt appearance of ſupplying the inhabitants with food, ſo that in all probability they are reduced to the neceſſity of principally living upon what ſhell-fiſh they can collect from the rocks. We ſaw the remains of two or three old huts, or rather ſheds, in and round which were ſcattered muſcle and cockle ſhells in abundance, but not the leaſt appearance of any thing elſe. Nor did we ſee any thing like a boat or canoe; ſo that in fact they ſeem to be nearly upon a par with the wretched natives of Terra del Fuego.

The only quadruped we ſaw diſtinctly was a ſpecies of opoſſum, which agrees in many reſpects with Mr. Pennant's deſcription of the Surinam opoſſum, and from the particular conformation of its hind feet, viz. the firſt and ſecond toes cloſely united, it probably may be the ſame ſpecies.

The birds are various, though not numerous, and ſome of them very beautiful, particularly a ſpecies of parroquet, and a ſmall bird of the *motacilla* genus with a bright blue head, which we, on that account, called *motacilla cyanea*.

Among a variety of fiſh, we obſerved, the *atherina hepſetus*, and a new ſpecies of *oſtracion*, only one of which was caught. The ſoil is in general good; we planted potatoes, kidney-beans, peach and apricot ſtones, which poſſibly may ſucceed very well.

CHAP. III.

Departure from Van Diemen's land—arrival at New Zealand—ſome of the natives venture alongſide—appear ſuſpicious and diſtruſtful—the tents erected on ſhore—brew ſpruce-beer—filthineſs of the New Zealanders—Tiu-arrooa's attachment to Captain Cook and Omai—Kihoorah, the chief who killed the unfortunate Mr. Rowe, viſits the ſhips; is diſliked by his countrymen—the Diſcovery drags her anchor in a ſquall—preparations for leaving New Zealand—Tiu-arrooa and another boy beg to accompany Omai—the mother of the former inconſolable—our departure.

FROM Adventure Bay we purſued an E. N. E. courſe. February 4th, Tueſday, early in the morning, one of the Diſcovery's marines fell over board, and was drowned. On Monday the 10th, in the afternoon, we ſaw the Coaſt of New Zealand, the extremes bearing from E. to S. by E. and on Wedneſday the 12th, both ſhips anchored in Ship Cove, Charlotte Sound. When moored, the N. point of the Cove bore N. 42 E. the S. E. point S. 35 E. and the N. part of Motuara Iſland N. 61 E.

The ſhips were ſcarcely ſecured before we obſerved ſeveral canoes of the natives croſſing from the Hippa to the oppoſite ſhore, along which they paddled, and ſtopped at ſome diſtance to reconnoitre us: but at length they came nearer, and expoſed ſomething white in their hands, which they waved backwards and forwards. This we ſuppoſed to be in token of peace, and of courſe anſwered it immediately; they then came along ſide the ſhips, though not without evident ſigns of ſuſpicion and diſtruſt. We purchaſed a fiſh or two and a few other trifles, and they ſoon after departed. The head of one of theſe canoes was curiouſly ornamented with carved open work.

The next day (Thurſday 13th) the tents were ſent on ſhore, with the cooper, and all the empty caſks, the aſtronomers tents and parties to wood and water. Coppers were alſo fixed up on ſhore, to boil the blubber we had collected at the Iſland of Deſolation, while the remaining hands on board repaired the rigging, and performed the neceſſary duty of the ſhips. As we had now met with but little refreſhment ſince our departure from the Cape, Capt. Cook, ever attentive to the health of his ſhips companies propoſed brewing a kind of beer, from a tree which bore ſome reſemblance to the ſpruce fir, the good effects of which he had experienced in his former voyage. Other coppers were therefore fixed for that purpoſe. On Tueſday the 18th, the beer was ſerved out, and found to be ſo pleaſant and ſalutary, and ſo generally approved of by all parties, that the Commodore determined to carry as much of it to ſea as he could. The oil party on ſhore were conſtantly attended by many of the natives, who received the ſcum and pieces of blubber that remained after boiling with the greateſt thankfulneſs; and indeed you could not oblige a New Zealander more than to give him the oil out of the ſhips lamps, which he would ſwallow with all the greedineſs imaginable. Of thoſe who were the moſt conſtantly on board, a young lad called Tiu-arrooa was the principal; he was poſſeſſed of good-nature, and had a great ſhare of ſenſe and diſcernment. He was greatly attached to Captain Cook and Omai, and was conſtantly with one or the other. His father was late chief of the diſtrict in which our ſhips lay, and was killed, with ſeveral others, about ſix weeks before our arrival, by a ſtrong party of another diſtrict, who attacked them in the night. Tiu-arrooa and a few others eſcaped with the greateſt difficulty.

A few days before our departure, Kihoorah (the chief who headed the party that cut off the unfortunate Mr. Rowe) paid us a viſit. At firſt he was very ſhy, and would not venture on board, fearful no doubt that we ſhould revenge the death of our people upon him; but when he found we took no notice of it, he laid aſide that diffidence, and readily came to the ſhips.—He was much diſliked by his own people, who frequently deſired us to ſhoot him, at the ſame time expreſſing their diſapprobation of him in pretty ſevere terms.

On the 20th (Thurſday), we had very heavy ſqualls of wind, in conſequence of which the Diſcovery drove, and was obliged to let go her ſheet-anchor, and both veſſels ſtruck yards and top-maſts.

The natives all this time ſupplied us plentifully with fiſh, among which was the elephant-fiſh, but one in particular, which they called a mogee, was not inferior to a ſalmon. We alſo frequently procured very excellent lobſters.

Captain Cook having given orders for ſtriking the tents, &c. and preparing for ſea, on the 23d every thing was put on board. Tiu-arrooa and another lad having expreſſed a deſire to continue with Omai, were permitted by the captain to accompany him. The mother of the former came on board, and with tears entreated him to remain behind, telling him, among many other powerful arguments, that we ſhould kill and eat him; but he was too reſolute and firm to pay any attention to her perſuaſions, and the poor woman went on ſhore quite inconſolable.

The next morning (Monday 24th), at nine, we weighed and made ſail, but having very light winds, we were obliged at noon to anchor again in nine fathom, muddy bottom, Point Jackſon bearing north, Cape Koamaroo E. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. and the Hippah, S. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W.

At eight the next day (Tueſday 25th), we again got up our anchor, and made ſail, ſtanding through Cook's Straits.

At noon, Cape Terra-wittee bore S. E. by S. Cape Koamaroo W. ½ S. and ſome rocks called the Brothers, from W. by S. to N. W. by W. our obſerved latitude being 41 deg. 6 min. ſouth.

So much has already been ſaid of the natives, with their manners, cuſtoms, houſes, furniture, canoes, &c. &c. that as we can make no improvement, a repetition would be both tedious and uſeleſs.

CHAP. IV.

Paſs through Cook's Straits—diſcover an iſland—affords a pleaſing proſpect—are ſeen by the natives—two of them come off in a canoe—the boats ſent to look for a landing-place—but return without ſucceſs—ſome account of the natives—leave the iſland—diſcover two more—the natives very readily come on board—deſcription of them—the arrival of a chief—he enters into a league of friendſhip with us—our boats ſent on ſhore, attended by a number of canoes—the king of the iſland ſends Captain Clerke a pig and ſome cocoa-nuts—the return of the boats—are not able to land—the ſhips ſtand off and on for the night.

WE continued in Cook's Straits the beſt part of Wedneſday (February 26th.) At noon, Cape Terra-witte bore N. W. by W. and Cape Palliſer E. by N. diſtant about four leagues.—

From this time to the 17th of March (Monday), we continued nearly a N. E. coaſt. At noon our obſerved latitude was 33 deg. and 23 min. S. In the afternoon we paſſed the trunk of a tree, which appeared much weather-beaten, and was ſurrounded with barnacles. Early in the morning of the 29th (Saturday), being in lat. 22 deg. 11 min. ſouth, and longitude 201 deg. 50 min. eaſt, we paſſed ſeveral pieces of wood and rock-weed: ſeveral man of war birds were obſerved; and a bird, ſomething like a cuckow, flew round the ſhips. Theſe being indications of the proximity of land, we kept a good look-out, but upon examining our charts, we found none laid down nearer than the Society Iſles.

At nine the next morning (Sunday 30th), we diſcovered land bearing about N. E. The Diſcovery being a-head, made the ſignal, which was anſwered by the Reſolution. The winds ſoon after proving light, and being ſome diſtance from the land, night came on before we could diſtinguiſh objects clearly; ſo got our tacks on board, and ſtood off and on till morning (Monday 31ſt), when we made all ſail for the land. At four we were running along the ſouth ſide, at about the diſtance of four miles, which as the ſun was juſt riſing, afforded a moſt pleaſing proſpect. The interior parts roſe in moderately high hills, upon the tops of which were trees of various kinds. The ſides next the ſea were very woody, and we could plainly diſtinguiſh coco nut and plantain trees in abundance.—Upon our nearer approach to the ſhore, we ſaw many of the natives running along the beach, and, by the help of our glaſſes, found that ſome had large clubs upon their ſhoulders, and that others were armed with long ſpears. As we proceeded, the Indians followed us, ſhouting and hollowing, their number increaſing very faſt. Soon after two of them put off in a canoe (the only one we ſaw), and came within fifty or ſixty yards of the ſhips, but would not venture nearer, though we made all the friendly ſigns we could think of, and ſhewed them beads, hatchets, looking-glaſſes, and many other articles of Indian trade. Their complexion appeared to be of the dark olive caſt, their hair was faſtened on the top of their heads ſomething in the New Zeeland faſhion: one of them had a large pearl oyſter-ſhell ſuſpended from his neck, and ſomething round his middle; the other was naked.—The canoe was neatly made, and furniſhed with an out rigger; the ſtern was high for ſo ſmall a boat, and terminated in a kind of fork.

Captain Cook finding the little probability there was of opening an intercourſe with the natives in this manner, ordered the pinnace and ſmall cutter to be got out, which, with the large cutter of the Diſcovery, and proper officers on board each, with trade of various kinds, were ſent in ſhore, to ſee if there was a poſſibility of landing, and to endeavour to purchaſe ſomething from the inhabitants. During their abſence, we ſounded ſeveral times, but got no ground at forty fathom. About three hours after, they returned, and the information we received was, that the iſland (at leaſt this part of it) was ſurrounded with a reef of coral rock, upon which a heavy ſurf was continually breaking; ſo that it was totally impracticable to land without deſtroying the boats, and endangering the lives of thoſe who were in them. About a quarter of a mile from the reef, they found ground at twenty-one fathom.

During their cruiſe, they had an opportunity of making a few remarks upon the natives, many of whom ſwam to them from the ſhore. They were ſtout and well made, but all armed; ſo that it was more than probable they would have oppoſed us, if we had ſucceeded ſo far as to have landed upon the reef. Some of them were armed with pata-patows, like thoſe of the New Zeelanders; and their language reſembled, in many reſpects, that of Otaheitee. They quite diſregarded hatchets and nails, but were much pleaſed with looking-glaſſes: like all other Indians they were given to thieving, and one of them very artfully ſtole a bunch of beads out of one of the boats, with which he ſwam off. Our people could not procure a ſingle coco nut, nor would they part with any thing they had. The ſhore appeared very delightful, the trees being lofty and ſhady, and the air was abſolutely perfumed with the ſcents of various flowers.

We were much chagrined at our bad ſucceſs for ſeveral reaſons, but more particularly on account of our live ſtock, which were almoſt in a ſtarving condition. Finding that nothing more could be done, at noon we made ſail, ſtanding to the northward, the extremes of the iſle bearing N. E. by E. and S. by E.

The next day (Tueſday, April 1ſt), at noon, land was again diſcovered, bearing N. by E. The Diſcovery, being near three miles a-head of the Reſolution, made the ſignal. At four in the afternoon, it bore from N. E. ½ N. to N. E. ¼ E. diſtant about ſeven leagues; we ſtood off and on for the night, and at day-break (Wedneſday 2d) it bore N. E. about four leagues. It appeared to be an iſland nearly of the ſame extent as the former. At five the Reſolution hoiſted the Diſcovery's ſignal to make ſail a-head to the N. E. and at ſeven we ſaw another ſmall iſle bearing N. ½ E. At noon tacked, the ſmall iſle bearing E. and the body of the large one S. E. by E. our latitude being 19 deg. 47 min. ſouth, and longitude 202 deg. 12 min. eaſt. All the afternoon we were making the beſt of our way for the large iſland, but being obliged to work to windward, night came on before we could reach it, ſo of courſe ſtood off and on till morning. During the night we ſaw ſeveral fires on ſhore; and the next day, at five in the morning, the Diſcovery made all ſail for the iſland, in conſequence of a ſignal from the Reſolution.

As the ſhips were ſtanding in, many of the natives put off, ſome in ſingle, others in double canoes; the ſingle have ſeldom room enough to contain more than one perſon, the double ones will hold eight or ten. They ſoon paddled along ſide, and with very little perſuaſion came on board, their ſize was above the middle ſtandard, and they were ſtout well-made people, with fine open countenances; their colour of the olive caſt, with a mixture of brown. Their hair was black; in ſome long, in others ſhort, and wore in a variety of forms, juſt as convenience or fancy directed. None had more than a narrow piece of cloth round their middle, which was painted or dyed of different patterns, with red, black, and yellow. Several were marked or tatowed moſt curiouſly from the middle downwards, particularly upon their legs. They were very friendly and good-natured, and ran about the ſhip with as little ceremony, and appeared as perfectly at eaſe, as if they had been long uſed to them. In this interval Captain Cook ordered out the pinnace and large cutter, and ſent them on board the Diſcovery, with Mr. Gore the firſt lieutenant, and Omai, to learn if there was a poſſibility of anchoring, and if any refreſhments could be procured from the natives, for, as ſhe was much nearer the ſhore than the Reſolution, of courſe all the canoes came to her. Soon after their arrival, a double canoe, paddled by eight people, with a tall ſtout man ſtanding up in her, came along-ſide; he, without any ceremony, came on board with a branch of a coco nut tree in his hand, and ſeveral roots of the a'wa *(piper methyſticum Foſteri)* a ſpecies of pepper, with which they intoxicate themſelves.

Omai accoſted him in the Otaheitee language, which appeared to vary but little from his own. It ſeems the intention of this viſit, was to eſtabliſh peace on both ſides, after the ratification of which, we were to be ſupplied with hogs, bread-fruit, plantains, and in ſhort every thing the iſland produced. After the ceremony (not one word of which we underſtood) was over, and every article agreed to by the chief on his part, and by Omai on our's, the Reſolution's boats (in one of which the Aree went), attended by the Diſcovery's large cutter, and a number of canoes, proceeded to the ſhore. At noon our obſerved latitude was 19 deg. 59 min. S. In the afternoon, the King of the iſland ſent Captain Clerke a preſent of ſome coco nuts, and a young pig, who liberally rewarded the bearers with ſome nails, a large piece of ſcarlet cloth, and ſome hatchets.

In the evening the boats returned, with the diſagreeable news of not being able to find a place where the ſhips could ride in ſafety, nor even a landing-place for a boat; this part of the iſland being ſurrounded by a reef, upon which a continual ſurf was breaking.

This information damped our ſpirits a good deal, for we were all elate with hope, and had already anticipated the pleaſure and ſatisfaction we ſhould experience, in the many good things the iſland produced; eſpecially as the natives were full as deſirous of our landing as we could poſſibly be ourſelves.

We were determined however not to give up the point in this manner, but to make another trial; and ſince it was impoſſible to effect a landing in our boats, thoſe who were to go upon this expedition were to land in the canoes of the natives, who from long experience are very dextrous at this kind of work. Having thus ſettled our plan, we ſtood off and on for the night.

CHAP. V.

The boats again ſent on ſhore—they return without any ſupply—the behaviour of the King—promiſes them proviſions, but deceives them—Omai finds five of his countrymen—leave Watieu and proceed to the ſmall Iſland—procure a ſtock of graſs for the cattle and ſome coco nuts—arrive at Harvey's Iſland—deſcription of the natives—are great thieves—the boats ſent to open a trade with them—but return without ſucceſs—Captain Cook determines to proceed to the Friendly Iſles, by way of Palmerſton's Iſle—and bears away accordingly.

THE next morning (April 3d), at nine the Reſolution's pinnace and cutter, in the former of which were Mr. Gore the firſt lieutenant, the ſurgeon, and Omai, attended by the Diſcovery's large cutter, were ſent on ſhore. The natives came to the ſhips, bringing coco nuts, plantains, and the intoxicating pepper root, but no hogs, which would have been the moſt welcome ſight; we gave them in return knives, red cloth, and nails. At ſeven in the evening the boats returned, but without either hogs, bread-fruit, plantains, or any thing elſe.

The account we received was, that they had with great difficulty got on ſhore in the Indian canoes; as ſoon as they were landed, the natives led them in great form to the King, who behaved rather reſerved upon the occaſion: upon informing him that we were in great want of proviſions, he ſaid that we ſhould have hogs and other things, but as they were at a diſtance up the country, it would be ſome time before his people could get them. They waited a conſiderable time, but none appearing, they again requeſted that ſome might be brought, or at leaſt ſome bread-fruit, plantains or coco nuts. They were deſired to ſtop a little longer, which they did till it became rather late, and they deemed it prudent to get on board as ſoon as they could. The inhabitants would at firſt ſcarce permit them to go, but ſeeing them reſolutely bent on departing, they at laſt acquieſced, having taken from them almoſt every thing they could find, and glad were our gentlemen to eſcape ſo cheap, as they were apprehenſive of being detained on ſhore much againſt their inclinations. One circumſtance was very remarkable; which was, Omai's finding five of his countrymen upon this iſland. The account they gave was, that in paſſing from one iſland to another they were drove out to ſea, and after beating up and down for ſeveral days and nights, and ſuffering almoſt the extremes of hunger, thirſt, and fatigue; they at laſt fell in with this iſland; the inhabitants of which not only very humanely afforded them protection, but likewiſe gave them wives; and, in ſhort, that they were now looked upon as natives of the place. This affair, according to Omai, happened near ten years ago.

Both the men and women were clothed much in the Otaheitee manner; they were armed with ſpears and clubs, the latter being curiouſly carved. The Indian name of this iſland is Watieu, that of the ſmaller one Modu-ete. During the night we ſtood off and on, and the next morning (April 4th), ſhaped our courſe for the ſmall iſle, purpoſing to try if we ſhould be more fortunate in our attempts at that place than at the former.

At ten, the boats from both ſhips were diſpatched on ſhore, not for the purpoſe of procuring proviſions, for the iſland was uninhabited, but to cut graſs &c. for our live ſtock, the providing for which was the principal object. After they had well loaded the boats, they were to bring coco nuts, bread-fruit, plaintains, &c. if the place produced them; in which caſe ſuch a number of nails, hatchets, &c. were to be left, as were thought a ſufficient recompence for them. Our obſerved latitude to-day was 19 deg. 47 min. S.

At half paſt ſix in the evening, the boats returned with a plentiful ſtock of graſs and many coco nuts, which were the only fruit they could find. The latter were divided amongſt the ſhips companies, and the former afforded a moſt welcome repaſt to our cattle, which were reduced almoſt to the laſt extremity. Our people ſaw the remains of two or three old huts, which had poſſibly been erected there by thoſe who came from Watieu for the purpoſe of fiſhing.

This iſland is alſo ſurrounded with a reef, which rendered landing rather difficult. It is very ſmall, being not more than a mile and half in length, and is ſituated about ten miles from Watieu.

At eight in the evening we hoiſted in the boats, and bore away for Harvey's Iſland, which Captain Cook diſcovered during his laſt voyage. The next day (April 5th) the ſhips companies were put to two-thirds allowance of every ſpecies of proviſion except grog. Soon after day-light the next morning (April 6th), we ſaw Harvey's Iſland, bearing W. S. W. At ten, we had very light airs, and the Diſcovery got too near the Reſolution, and was obliged to get out her large cutter to tow her clear. Soon after we ſaw ſeveral Indians putting off in their canoes; at firſt they kept aloof, as if to reconnoitre, but at laſt ventured alongſide. Their appearance was altogether wretched, and very different from the inhabitants of the tropical iſles in general. Their hair was black and ſhaggy, they were very dirty, and had only a very ſmall ſtrip of cloth round their middle.

They wanted every thing they ſaw, and one of them was handing the oars out of the Diſcovery's cutter, which was along-ſide. Theſe we were not willing to part with, and of courſe oppoſed him, which enraged the fellow ſo much, that he caught up his paddle and ſtruck one of our people over the head with it. Some of them finding a piece of beef towing over board to freſhen, very dexterouſly divided the rope, made off with the beef, and afterwards ſold it on board the Reſolution for ſome nails. In the afternoon, the boats were ſent in ſhore, well manned and armed, to try if a trade could be opened with the natives. They returned in about two hours, with only a few coco nuts, the inhabitants being more diſpoſed to commit hoſtilities then to traffick. This iſland, we found during our run along ſhore, was two ſeparate ones, which circumſtance, with its being inhabited, were unknown before.

Captain Cook now finding it impracticable to reach Otaheitee in any reaſonable time, as the wind continued ſo far to the eaſtward, and it being abſolutely neceſſary to procure food for the cattle, gave up all thoughts of it for the preſent; eſpecially as the ſeaſon was too far advanced to ſtop any time at the Society Iſles, and then proceed to the northward. He therefore determined to make the beſt of his way to the Friendly Iſles, and ordered the Diſcovery, which was the beſt ſailing ſhip, to keep two miles a-head, purſuing a W. S. W. courſe: and as Palmerſton's Iſland was in our way, he propoſed ſtopping there a day or two, and taking in a freſh ſupply of graſs and coco nuts; a ſufficient quantity of which, eſpecially of the former, he hoped to procure to laſt to the Friendly Iſles. At five in the afternoon we bore away, and at ſix the body of Hervey's Iſland bore E. by N. diſtant about three leagues.

CHAP. VI.

Hot ſultry weather with thunder and lightning—arrive at Palmerſton's Iſland—find no anchorage for the ſhips—the boats ſent on ſhore—account of this Iſland—inhabited by numerous flocks of birds—the reef affords excellent fiſh—particularly large eels—deſcription of them—many ſharks—find part of a canoe and a piece of plank upon the beach—paſs Savage Iſland—and deſcry the Friendly Iſles—anchor off Anamooka.

FROM the ſeventh to the twelfth, we had very light airs and calms: the weather was hot and ſultry, the thermometer ſtanding at 83, and 84. We had alſo much thunder and lightning, attended wirh frequent ſqualls and heavy ſhowers of rain. The latter proved very acceptable to us, as we collected ſeveral hogſheads, and though it was ſtrongly impregnated with the flavour of the tar, which it had contracted from the rigging; ſtill in our preſent ſituation it was much too valuable to be loſt.

On Sunday, April 13th, at ſix in the morning we ſaw Palmerſton's Iſland bearing W. At noon our obſerved latitude was 18° 6′ S. and longitude 197° 23′ E. when it bore W. by N. diſtant about five leagues. In the courſe of the day, we had light variable winds, and during the night ſtood off and on. In the morning (April 14th), at four, the land bore W. between three and four leagues diſtant. At eight, boats from both ſhips were ſent to ſound, but returned in the afternoon, having found no proper anchorage, but had diſcovered a kind of inlet or break in the reef, where the boats might land with ſafety.

Our firſt care the next day (April 15th) was to cut graſs for the ſtock, which were in a moſt piteous condition, nor did we think of engaging in any other buſineſs till we had got a ſufficient quantity to maintain them till our arrival at the Friendly Iſles. After this the people were employed in gathering coco nuts, which were diſtributed to the ſhip's company. The graſs and nuts being brought on board, we, on Friday evening (April 17th), bore away, ſteering a weſterly courſe.

Palmerſton's Iſland lies in latitude 18° 4′ S. and 196° 40′ E. longitude; it was diſcovered and thus called by Captain Cook in his laſt voyage. It conſiſts of an extenſive reef, which is nearly ſeven leagues in circumference: upon different parts of this reef, riſes a ſmall patch of land, of which there are in all nine. The largeſt is not more than a mile and half in circumference; ſome of them not 150 yards. Within the reef is a lagoon, which, as far as we ſaw, had no connection with the ſea: it appeared to be in ſome places between two and three fathom deep.

The produce of this place conſiſts principally of coco nuts, and very fine ſcurvy graſs. The only inhabitants we ſaw were rats, lizards, man of war and tropic birds, boobies, noddies and a few curlews. The tropic and man of war birds were ſo numerous, that the trees were abſolutely loaded with them, and at the ſame time ſo tame as to ſuffer themſelves to be taken off the boughs; a convincing proof that they are never moleſted by any human beings.

The reef affords ſhelter for variety of excellent fiſh, particularly a large eel, which we found moſt excellent eating. This fiſh is very ugly in its appearance, which is ſufficient to create horror and diſguſt, and had it not been for Omai, who told us it was very fine, it is more than probable that we ſhould have remained ignorant of its goodneſs. The idea which it would firſt ſtrike one with, is that of a large ſnake; its length is between four and five feet, and ſpotted or variegated with brown and black; in circumference it is about ten or twelve inches; the head is ſmall and rather flat, with ſmall fiery eyes; the part immediately behind the head is as it were ſwelled or puffed up to a conſiderable ſize; the mouth is wide and well armed with ſmall but very ſharp teeth. There are likewiſe an incredible number of ſharks continually lurking about the reef, which though ſmall are very ravenous. None of our boats could paſs or repaſs to the ſhips, without twelve or fourteen of theſe gentry after them, ſo that if any of our people had been unfortunate enough to fall overboard, they muſt inevitably have been devoured.

Upon the beach, we found the remains of a canoe, and a piece of plank, which appeared to have compoſed part of an European veſſel. Some diſtance from theſe was another piece of wood, rudely carved, which, from the figures upon it, Omai ſaid had once belonged to a burying place of ſome iſlands in theſe ſeas.

We paſſed Savage Iſland (ſo denominated laſt voyage on account of the ferocity of its inhabitants) on the 23d inſtant at midnight, when it bore from W. by S. to N. W. by N. Our weather was in general cloudy and ſqually, with thunder, lightning, and heavy rain. On Monday evening (April 28th), being according to our reckoning not far from the eaſtermoſt of the Friendly Iſles, we paſſed the night in ſtanding to the northward and ſouthward. The next day (29th), at nine in the morning, we deſcried the eaſtern range of thoſe iſlands from the maſt-head. At noon they bore from N. W. by N. to W. by N. our diſtance from the neareſt being about four miles.

At four, we had no leſs than fifteen iſlands in ſight, the largeſt of which, called by the natives Anamooka, by us Rotterdam, bore N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. At ſix the Reſolution made the ſignal for caſting anchor, and half an hour after both ſhips came to; Three Hill Iſland (a ſmall iſle with three elevations upon it) bearing N. W. by N. The night was very ſqually, with thunder and lightning.

April 30th, in the morning, at ſix, we weighed, and made ſail, ſhaping our courſe for Anamooka, as well as variable winds would permit. At nine, many of the natives put off in their canoes, and came along ſide without any heſitation or appearance of fear, and totally unarmed. This confidence which they repoſed in us, was, we thought, a proof, and a convincing one too, of a peaceable and friendly diſpoſition, and the name by which theſe iſlands are diſtinguiſhed, viz. Friendly, is well applied. We purchaſed of them (for all their canoes were freighted with ſome good thing or other) coco nuts, fowls, bread-fruit, and yams, for which we paid beads, nails, knives, and ſmall pieces of red cloth. At noon the weather became ſo thick and hazy with hard rain, that we were not able to diſtinguiſh the land, and all the afternoon and night we were employed in ſtanding off and on, not being able to find an anchoring place.

The next day (May 1ſt), at noon, Anamooka bore E. ½ S. about four miles diſtant. At ſix in the afternoon we anchored in forty-ſeven fathom, ſandy bottom, the north point of Anamooka bearing E. N. E. diſtant five miles. At daylight (Friday 2d) we got up our anchor, and made ſail. Numbers of the natives came off to us, and we ſoon purchaſed a ſufficient quantity of hogs, yams, plantains, fowls, &c. &c. for the ſhip's company, and bid adieu to every ſpecies of ſhip's proviſion except grog. At noon the extremes of Anamooka bore S. E. by S. and S. ½ W. diſtant from the neareſt ſhore three miles. At four in the afternoon, both veſſels anchored, and ſoon after were moored a cable each way, the beſt bower of the Diſcovery being in ſeventeen fathom, the ſmall bower in twenty-ſeven faſthom, her diſtance from the reef about three cables length.

CHAP. VII.

Captain Cook's order relative to trade—the tents erected, and markets held on ſhore—the Diſcovery parts her ſmall bower cable—the arrival of Feenow—the Diſcovery parts her beſt bower cable—Captain Cook accompanies Feenow to Happi with the ſhips—receives great civilities there—is entertained with boxing and wreſtling matches and dances—departs from Happi—the paſſage to Anamooka very dangerous—arrival of Powlahow—who proves to be the king—ſtrictures on Feenow's conduct—Powlahow viſits the ſhips—Feenow arrives and pays him homage.

AS ſoon as the ſhips were ſecured, Captain Cook iſſued an order to prohibit all trade, except for neceſſaries, which was read to the ſhips companies.

The ſubſtance of it was, that there ſhould be a perſon appointed from both ſhips to hold a market with the natives on ſhore, for ſuch proviſions as the iſland produced.

That two other perſons ſhould likewiſe be appointed to trade on board; and that none other ſhould preſume to purchaſe or buy, without leave of the captain, or, in his abſence, that of the commanding officer.

That no curioſities ſhould be bought till the ſhips had procured a ſufficient ſtock of refreſhment; after which a general trade would be opened, and every one at liberty to purchaſe what he thought proper.

The next day (May 3d) the aſtronomers tents, inſtruments, &c. were got on ſhore, together with the coopers; the empty caſks, &c. and the marines. The chief of the iſland furniſhed us with a large hut for our reception on ſhore, in the front of which the market was held; a line a line was drawn between the natives and us, at ſome diſtance from the hut, to prevent their crowding too near, and none of them were permitted to come within it. We were abundantly ſupplied with hogs, fowls, yams, plantains, bread-fruit, and coco nuts, and in ſhort fared ſumptuouſly every day.

On the fourth, a party of men were ſent to cut wood, as the iſland apparently afforded plenty of that article; amongſt other trees they unluckily cut down ſeveral of the manchineel, the juice of which getting into their eyes, rendered them blind for ſeveral days. In the afternoon, the Diſcovery's ſmall bower cable parted, having been divided by the rocks; the ſtream-anchor was directly carried out to ſteady the ſhip to the weſtward, but the ebb tide run ſo ſtrongly to the eaſtward, that they were obliged to poſtpone it till ſlack water, which was near twelve at night. Moſt of the boats and people were employed the next morning in ſweeping for the anchor, which was too valuable an article to be loſt; they did not ſucceed however till the afternoon, when they purchaſed it by the buoy rope. The cable was cut about twenty-eight fathoms from the anchor.

In the courſe of this day we were viſited by a chief, whoſe name the natives told us was Feenow; this man came from the iſland of Tonga-taboo or Amſterdam; he had a numerous retinue, who paid him great reſpect. One of them, who appeared to be a principal man, made a long oration, in the courſe of which he gave us to underſtand, that Feenow was Agee lahee, or king of Anamooka, and all the ſurrounding iſles, of which he enumerated near a hundred. There were likewiſe ſeven or eight fine handſome girls with him, which we were told were his wives.

Having, before the arrival of this chief, loſt ſeveral things from the ſhips, which we could impute to no one but the Indians,

dians, the Captain complained to him of the thefts, and begged that he would exert his authority, and get them reſtored: Feenow promiſed to do it, and in the courſe of the day they were returned. The bottom where the Diſcovery lay being very rocky and uneven, Captain Clerke determined to ſhift it farther to the weſtward. The next day (May 7th) he gave orders to weigh the ſtream-anchor, and heave ſhort upon the beſt bower; but the united force of the whole ſhip's company was not able to purchaſe it, the cable having got foul of a rock; they waited till ſlack water, when the ſhip would tend to the ebb tide, and probably clear it, but at eleven the cable parted. The recovery of this anchor cauſed an infinite deal of trouble, as it had got in a hole between the rocks, and could only be ſeen when the water was perfectly ſmooth; but at laſt, after a number of unſucceſsful trials, they were lucky enough to weigh it.

Feenow had for ſome days paſt been very deſirous that Captain Cook would accompany him to ſome iſlands, which he ſaid were about two days ſail from Anamooka; theſe iſlands he called Happi, which in the language of theſe people ſignifies *a cluſter*. As this bid fair for a new diſcovery, the Captain very readily accepted his invitation.

On Wedneſday morning (May 14th) we weighed, and made ſail, and after a troubleſome and dangerous paſſage, occaſioned by the number of rocks and ſhoals through which we were partly obliged to paſs, arrived at Happi on the 17th. We here experienced a repetition of thoſe civilities from Feenow, which we found at Anamooka: every thing was conducted with the greateſt regularity and decorum, and in ſhort, nothing was wanting to render our ſtay as agreeable as poſſible.

He entertained us with boxing and wreſtling matches, and variety of dances both by men and women; which exceeded every thing of the kind that was ever ſeen before. An idea cannot be conveyed by words, for their attitudes were ſo various and different from any other dances, and at the ſame time ſo regular and exact, that the whole company, which conſiſted of thirty or forty people, ſeemed to be actuated by one ſoul.

Feenow having given a ſpecimen of what his countrymen could do, deſired Captain Cook to entertain him with ſomething in our way. The next day (May 30th) the marines from both ſhips were ſent on ſhore to perform their exerciſe, which however did not appear to ſtrike him with any very great ſurprize. Probably, he was conſcious of his ſuperiority over us in that particular; at leaſt if he was not, moſt of us were. However, leſt he ſhould think us a parcel of poor creatures altogether, a number of fireworks were let off in the evening, which ſeemed to turn the balance in our favour.

On the 29th, we weighed our anchors, and made ſail. Sunday (June 1ſt) in the evening, it being very ſqually, wet, and dark, the Reſolution made the ſignal of danger, having got too near the breakers, upon a reef of coral rock, which almoſt ſurrounded us, but fortunately ſhe ſoon cleared them. On the 2d, at one in the afternoon, the weather became ſo ſqually, that Captain Cook thought it prudent to caſt anchor, for we were encloſed on every ſide with rocks and ſhoals, and the violence of the wind prevented us from ſeeing in what direction to proceed: we accordingly dropped our beſt bowers in forty-three fathom water, with a ſandy bottom, and took in our top-gallant-yards.

This diſagreeable weather continued till the 4th, during which time we underwent a good deal of anxiety, for our ſituation was truly alarming, as we muſt unavoidably have gone upon the rocks if our cables had parted. Having got up our anchors, we again made ſail, and on the 6th, at three in the afternoon, anchored off Anamooka, about three quarters of a mile from ſhore.

One of Captain Cook's reaſons for ſtoping here a ſecond time, was to look at ſome melons and cucumbers, the ſeeds of which he had planted ſoon after our arrival in May; but to his great regret they were in a very poor ſtate, having been nearly deſtroyed by vermin.

The day after our ſecond arrival here, we were informed that another great man from Tonga-Taboo, or Amſterdam, was arrived, whoſe name was Fatafee-Powlahow. This gentleman ſoon after came on board; he was above the middle ſize, exceeding fat, and appeared to be about forty. His attendants were numerous, and there was not one of them but told us that this man was the real king of Tonga-Taboo, Anamooka, Happi, and in ſhort all the iſlands which we before ſuppoſed Feenow king of. This ſtrange account ſurpriſed us a good deal, as every body had taken it for granted that Feenow was ſovereign, every mark of reſpect and ſubmiſſion being paid him, and how to account for the uſurpation (if ſuch it was) of this man, was a circumſtance we could not readily ſucceeded in.

Feenow had gone the day before our departure from Happi, to a neighbouring iſland called Va-vow, from which he was to return at the end of three days, with a large ſtock of red feathers and various other things. The time elapſed, but no Feenow appeared. This circumſtance, though it did not ſtrike us then, appeared againſt him now with double force, and gave us great reaſon to ſuppoſe, that our old friend had really aſſumed a title to which he had no right, and that in fact he was abſent for no other reaſon, but to avoid an interview with Powlahow, in the courſe of which all his conſequence muſt fall to the ground.

Powlahow, during his ſtay on board, paid great attention to the different parts of the ſhip, and, amongſt other queſtions, aſked us what we came to theſe iſlands for? He ſaid, we appeared to be in want of nothing, and that we all looked well and in health. A queſtion of this kind came ſo unſuſpected, that at firſt the Captain was at a loſs what reply to make; but recollecting himſelf, he told him he came there by the order of his King, who was a great and mighty prince, and was deſirous of entering into a league of friendſhip with him; that there was a large ſtock of hatchets, knives, beads, red cloth, &c. on board, which he would barter with him for hogs, and ſuch articles as the iſland produced. This anſwer ſatisfied him very well, and, at the deſire of the Captain, he went down with him into the great cabin, where he received a preſent ſuitable to his rank, and then went on board his canoe very much pleaſed.

The next morning Feenow arrived, and in the preſence of ſome of our gentlemen, who by chance were with Powlahow, acknowledged him as his ſuperior, and paid him the homage of a ſubject, but with a countenance ſo expreſſive of ſhame, that every one who ſaw him felt for and pitied him. Feenow's conduct was however natural enough; for moſt people are anxious to appear greater than they really are, eſpecially if they are likely to gain any thing by it, which moſt probably was the caſe with him; and in this reſpect it anſwered his purpoſe very well, for he received many preſents on that account, which otherwiſe would not have been given him. We found, however, that though he was not king, he was one of the principal men, and generaliſſimo of the king's forces, and upon all occaſions led them out to battle.

CHAP. VIII.

The ſhips leave Anamooka—the paſſage to Amſterdam dangerous on account of the rocks—arrival there—are informed that Malla-wagga is King—the Captains viſit him, but are diſappointed—Malla-wagga pays homage to Powlahow—the Captains accompany Powlahow to Moa, to be preſent at a ceremony called Anache—account of that ceremony—arrival at Middleburgh—departure for Otaheitee.

IN the afternoon we got up our anchors and made ſail, attended by Powlahow and Feenow, in their canoes, which went at a great rate, and a number of ſmaller ones. The royal canoe was diſtinguiſhed from the reſt by a ſmall bundle of graſs, of a red colour, faſtened to the end of a pole, and fixed in the ſtern of the canoe in the ſame manner as our enſign ſtaffs.

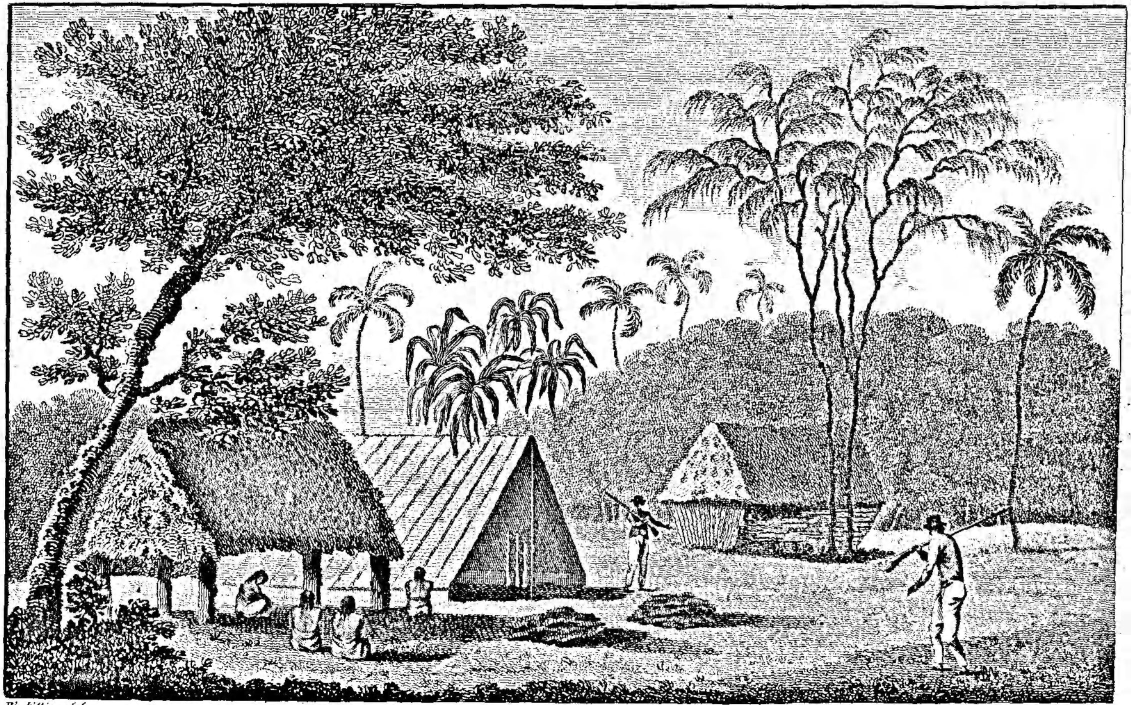
We found this paſſage a moſt troubleſome and dangerous one; we could clearly perceive the bottom (which was one continued bed of coral), throughout the time, and here and there a rock towering its head above the reſt. The Diſcovery did fall foul of one, and had we not the advantage of ſmooth water and a ſteady breeze, in all probability we might have run upon more of them.

On the ninth, at eleven in the morning, the Reſolution let go her anchor, as did the Diſcovery ſoon after, but ſtill ſurrounded in a manner by rocks. Amſterdam, or Tonga-Taboo, then bore S. 75 W. but at a good diſtance. The boats were ſoon after ſent away to look for a more ſecure place for the ſhips, and having found one, we removed to it, and at five anchored for the night in about eight fathom, ſandy bottom. The next morning (June 10th) we weighed and ſtood for Amſterdam, and in the afternoon both ſhips let go their anchors in a fine ſecure harbour,

our depth of water being ten fathom, with a black ſandy bottom; our diſtance from the ſhore about half a mile.

The next day (June 11th) the tents and obſervatories were got on ſhore, and the gunner of each ſhip appointed to trade with the natives. The market was held in a pleaſant ſpot of ground, ſurrounded with trees, and in the front of one of Powlahow's houſes, adjoining to which the ſhips tents were pitched. Every article of trade was in the greateſt plenty except bread-fruit, the ſeaſon for which was then over; but the want of this was amply ſupplied by yams and tarrow. The cattle likewiſe were ſent on ſhore, as they had been at Anamooka.

In the courſe of the day we were informed that a very old man, whoſe name was Malla-wagga, was the real King of all theſe iſlands, but being overwhelmed by the infirmities of age, he was unable to hold the reins of government, which were therefore turned over to



W. Ellis, del.

J. Heath, sculp.

A View of the Market Place at Amſterdam, or Tonga-taboo.

Publish'd Dec.r 14. 1781 by G. Robinson.

Powlahow. This circumſtance appeared very ſtrange to us, no leſs than three people having been pointed out to us as king; but as this was the caſe, the Captains thought it neceſſary to pay their reſpects to him, and informed Powlahow of their intentions, who readily agreed to accompany them. In the morning Captains Cook and Clerke, attended by Omai, Powlahow, and ſome of the officers, ſet off by water (having a man with them to act as pilot), for his reſidence, which was at a part of the iſland called Moa, and about ſix miles diſtant.

Upon their arrival, they were received by a large concourſe of people, who expreſſed the greateſt ſatisfaction at ſeeing them. After walking a few paces, Powlahow went into a plantation, attended by an old woman, and put on a very fine garment and a kind of large mat, after which they all went to a pleaſant green, ſurrounded by tall majeſtic trees: on one ſide was a ſpacious houſe, where the

Captains ſeated themſelves. Powlahow ſitting under the hedge of a plantation.

After waiting ſome time, in conſtant expectation of being introduced to his majeſty, and not ſeeing any probability of its being done, Powlahow was aſked the reaſon of the delay: he told them that Malla-wagga was gone down to the ſhips. The gentlemen were not perfectly pleaſed with this intelligence, after having been at the trouble of going ſo far, in an exceeding hot day; however, finding his majeſty was not viſible, they made the beſt of it, and returned to the boats.

Moa is a moſt pleaſant ſpot, and much ſuperior to that part of the iſland where our tents were erected, which probably is the reaſon why the king and nobility reſide there.

The houſes are all very good, and in general large, ſome of them being between fifty or ſixty feet in length, ſixteen or eighteen feet wide, and lofty enough to admit of an upper floor. The wood work is good, and laſhed or tied together with line of different colours, ſo diſpoſed as to form diamonds and various other figures. They are all well thatched, and will not admit a drop of rain; the bottoms or floor are covered with mats.

Upon the return of the Captains to the ſhips, they found that no Malla-wagga had been there; a piece of information which perplexed them a good deal, being totally unable to account for Powlahow's behaviour. The next morning Feenow came on board, and told us he was going for the old man; they both returned the following day. As ſoon as his majeſty came on board, he ſaw Powlahow, who chanced to be there, and to the ſurprize of us all, paid him homage, by bowing and touching his feet.

This extraordinary circumſtance puzzled us all, not a perſon in either ſhip being able to unravel the myſtery. What could induce Powlahow himſelf to carry the Captains to ſee the old man as king, when he muſt be conſcious that he really was not, is certainly very ſtrange.

Malla-wagga is the father of Feenow and Tubou (the latter a man of great power and conſequence in the iſland), and Powlahow's father, whoſe name was Fatafee Powlahow, is dead, and it is by no means clear that Malla-wagga could ever have been king. He has been generaliſſimo, a poſt which his ſon Feenow now poſſeſſes, as has been mentioned before. Theſe miſtakes however muſt ariſe from our imperfect knowledge of their language, which is the only clue to guide us to the truth. We alſo received another piece of intelligence; which was that Powlahow's aunt, by the father's ſide, was nominally queen of all the Iſlands, to whom he himſelf paid homage, as well as to a ſon and daughter of her's by a man of Fidgi (an iſland about five days ſail from Amſterdam); and that during her life they alſo were ſuperior to him in point of rank, but upon her death all their conſequence ceaſes. Both ſon and daughter are diſordered in their ſenſes; the name of the former is Latoo-labooloo. Malla-wagga is a very old man, apparently not leſs than ſeventy, and is at times quite childiſh: he was much better pleaſed with a few beads than with hatchets or nails.

Having expreſſed a deſire of ſeeing our method of fighting, an account of which he had probably heard from his ſon Feenow, Captain Cook ordered all the marines on ſhore for that purpoſe. In return for this piece of complaiſance, we were entertained with ſome capital heivahs or entertainments, in which all the principal people aſſiſted, eſpecially Tubow, who was one of the firſt rate performers.

July 8th, the Captains and ſome other gentlemen were invited by Powlahow to be preſent at a ceremony, which he called Anache, the meaning of which we could not clearly comprehend, but it ſeems to be, the people ſwearing allegiance to his ſon, and poſſibly is always obſerved when the child arrives at a certain age. Before this ceremony he was never ſuffered to eat with his father, but afterwards will always ſit at table with him.

The company arrived at Moa (the place mentioned before) about eight in the morning, and found Powlahow with about fifty of his nobles about him, drinking a'wa. Going a little farther, they obſerved a great number of people aſſembled, and ſitting on each ſide the road of a ſpacious green ſurrounded with lofty trees; they immediately called out Taboo, and deſired the Captains, &c. to ſit down and pull off their hats.

In one place ſat ſix or ſeven agees or chiefs ſinging, and by them were lying ſeveral ſticks, with a ſmall yam tied to each. After continuing their ſong for ſome time, two of them took one of the above ſticks with a yam, and carried it between them upon their ſhoulders, followed by five or ſix others with clubs and ſpears: this was repeated by a like number of people ſeveral times. The yams were depoſited under a large ſpreading tree on a green, facing a burial-place; after which all the agees, except three or four, went away.

They being gone alſo, a man came carrying a pigeon on a ſtick, but it was not left under the tree with the yams. Here a pauſe enſued, and the gentlemen aſking if the ceremony was over, were told no, but that Taboo would come preſently, during which time they could not be upon the ſpot, but might retire behind the fence of a plantation not far off, through which they might look and ſee the whole. Omai being of their own complexion, and dreſſing himſelf in their manner was readily admitted, and Captain Cook being deſirous of ſeeing the whole, was with much difficulty, ſuffered to be preſent, though not till he had ſtripped himſelf from his waiſt upwards.

At four in the afternoon the other gentlemen were conducted to the fence of the plantation, and on looking through, ſaw a number of people aſſembled together under the ſame tree the yams were left in the morning. Soon after came the prince (a fine boy about twelve years old) attended by three agees, and followed by fifteen couple of women, each couple carrying a long ſlip of white cloth. The prince then ſeated himſelf on the green with his attendants, as did the women, who delivered the cloth, and then roſe up and ſeated themſelves at a diſtance. Immediately after this, ſeveral men came with each his coco nut branch and large ſtick, and in the ſpace of three minutes made a commodious little houſe, to which the prince withdrew with the agees who attended him. After that came Powlahow attended by two men, and ſat down at a ſmall diſtance from the houſe. A ſhort pauſe enſued, when upon ſomething being ſaid by a man who appeared to be maſter of the ceremonies, ſeveral of the people who were ſeated ran off, and after a ſhort ſtay returned. Then two men came, with each a green bough in his hand, made their obeiſance to the prince, and for a few minutes ſat before him. That done, the agees with the yams came in by pairs, laid them down at his feet, and ſeated themſelves round him; when the man, mentioned before as maſter of the ceremonies, made a ſpeech, and was anſwered by different people, ſeemingly in the affirmative. The harangue continued about a quarter of an hour, after which all the people diſperſed, and thus ended the ceremony for the day.

The next day it was repeated with ſome little variation; for they preſented him with fiſh of different kinds and awa; and beſides the women's bringing cloth, ſome of the men laid mats before him, which with the cloth were wrapped round him, ſo that by the time the whole was over, he had more things upon him than he could move under. The whole concluded with entertainments of boxing, wreſtling, dancing, &c.

This ceremony ſeems to be an allegorical or figurative acknowledgment of the obedience of the people to their prince. The yams which were brought probably implied, that they would always ſupply him with whatever was neceſſary for the ſupport of life, as good ſubjects ought to do. The cloth brought by the women (which is their peculiar manufacture) might have nearly the ſame meaning, and ſo of the fiſh and awa. The ſubſtance of the ſpeech might be to inform the people, that the prince was arrived at ſuch an age, and to know if they would acknowledge him as king after the death of his father, to which it is likely they gave an anſwer in the affirmative.

July 10th, Captain Cook preſented Powlahow with a bull and cow, a ſow and boar, and two ducks. To Feenow, he gave a horſe and mare, and to Malla-wagga a ram and two ewes; but the old gentleman paid ſo little attention to them, that the captain ordered them to be brought on board again.

On the morning of the 11th, both the ſhips weighed, and made ſail, and were employed till ſix at night in turning to the eaſtward, between two reefs not more than a quarter of a mile aſunder.

At ſeven we anchored, but having freſh gales and ſqually weather, the Diſcovery drove off the bank, and was obliged to weigh her anchor, and make ſail: ſhe continued working to windward till one the next morning, and then anchored again. During the night we had freſh gales; at nine in the morning, (July 12th) we got in the boats; and at eleven weighed our anchors. We continued turning to the eaſtward till the 13th, when we came to, off the weſt ſide of Middleburgh, and ſoon after we moored ſhip; when the N. W. part of Middleburgh bore N. 26 E; a ſmall iſland N. 13 W. the eaſt part of Amſterdam N. 30 W. and the S. part N. 78 W. our diſtance from ſhore three quarters of a mile.

Soon after we had ſecured the ſhips, a double canoe arrived from Amſterdam, probably with inſtructions to the people at what rate to ſell their various articles, and to inform them of the prices we had given. The following day the gunners were ſent on ſhore as uſual, to trade, and found abundance of every thing, particularly ſhaddocks, with which this iſland abounds. The natives treated us with civility, but not in the ſame degree as at the other iſlands. We ſtaid here till the 17th inſtant, when the ſhips being ready for ſea, and every thing got on board, we weighed our anchors, and made ſail, ſhaping our courſe for Otaheitee, having ſome live hogs on board, a number of yams, and ſome caſks of corned pork.

CHAP. IX.

Account of the Friendly Iſlands—produce—animals—deſcription of the natives—dreſs—houſes—food—cookery—amuſements—manufactures—canoes—burial places—funeral ceremonies—form of government—weapons.

MANY particulars have already been related of theſe iſlands in the courſe of the laſt voyage; but as our ſtay among them this time was of a much longer duration, of courſe we had a greater ſcope for obſervations. But much remains for future navigators; the moſt perfect account we can produce is at beſt but a confuſed piece of work, and what little we can relate is in general confined to a few common articles, ſuch as the dreſs, food, and manufactures of the natives; every thing beyond being little more than conjecture. It is from the form of government, laws, manners, cuſtoms, and religion of a people, that we are to derive amuſement and inſtruction: and as the only road to obtain this, is by a knowledge of the language of the country, every account that can be given muſt of courſe fall far ſhort of the truth, till that knowledge is acquired.

Anamooka, or Rotterdam, lies in lat. 20 deg. 14 min. S. it is almoſt ſurrounded by a reef of coral rock, and affords no good harbour. The ſoil is rich and fertile, except when you approach the ſhore, where it becomes ſandy: it is of a very moderate elevation, and is well clothed with trees of various kinds, but affords but little good water, on which account the natives are obliged to go inland for what they uſe in cooking.

Our watering-place was nearly a quarter of a mile from the beech, and was in fact nothing more than a ſtanding pool, in which the natives bathed themſelves; the water was both thick and muddy, and not very palatable, but we found no bad effects from the uſe of it.

The Happi iſlands lay in about a S. W. direction from Anamooka; Lefoogo, which is the name of that, off which the ſhips anchored, is in latitude 19 deg. 46 min. S. and longitude 185 deg. 10 min. E. They are all (at leaſt all we ſaw) low, flat iſlands of ſmall dimenſions, and afford but little water: moſt of them are well covered with trees, which prove the ſoil to be good.

Tonga-taboo, or Amſterdam, is in lat. 21 deg. 8 min. S. and 185 deg. 8 min. E. longitude. It is the largeſt that we ſaw of the Friendly Iſles, and is low and flat, without the leaſt elevation. Water here alſo is a ſcarce article, ſo much ſo that we were obliged to dig a well upon a ſmall iſland about three miles from the ſhips; but after all it proved brackiſh and unpalatable.

Middleburg, or Eaoowe, is to the northward of Amſterdam, in lat. 21 deg.

21 min. S. This iſland is by far the moſt pleaſant of the whole, and is interſperſed with lawns, hills, and dales, as beautiful as can be conceived. The ſoil upon the hills is nearly of the colour of red oker, that in the vallies black and rich. It affords fine water, but not convenient for the uſe of ſhips, being too far inland.

The iſlands of Va-vow and Fidgi we never ſaw; but by the account of the natives they are both high-land, and plentifully ſupplied with water.

The foundation of all theſe iſlands, is a ſolid bed of coral rock, the points of which project even upon the tops of the hills in ſome places. The inland parts are but thinly inhabited, the natives preferring thoſe which are neareſt the ſea for the convenience of launching their canoes. This however muſt not be taken in a general ſenſe, for ſome of the chiefs have their houſes a conſiderable diſtance from the ſhore.

The houſes do not form towns or villages,

lages, but are built about five hundred yards or more from each other, and generally in the midſt of a plantation, the whole of which is frequently fenced in with a hedge of bamboo, or reeds with a door-way; and ſometimes a man's whole eſtate is incloſed in this manner.

Theſe iſlands are populous, but we cannot pretend to aſcertain the number of inhabitants. Their produce is bread-fruit, plantains, bananas, coco nuts, yams, tarrow, a kind of ſweet potatoe of a yellow colour, a fruit reſembling an apple, which we never ſaw ripe, ſugar cane, a nut *(inocarpus edulis, Forſt. Nov. Spec. Plant.)* which eats much like a cheſnut, particularly when roaſted, and very fine ſhaddocks. The latter were very plentiful at Middleburgh; at Anamooka they were ſcarce, but at Amſterdam there were none. They have alſo many trees in common with the Society Iſles; ſuch as the toa-tree *(caſuarina equiſetifolia. Forſt.)* the Chineſe paper mulberry-tree, the candle-tree *(aleurites triloba, Forſt.)* the *Barringtonia ſpecioſa*, the *athrodactilis ſpinoſa*, and ſeveral others.

Their tame animals are hogs, dogs, and poultry; they have likewiſe rats, and a very large ſpecies of bat *(veſpertilio vampyrus, Linnæi.)* Lizards are very numerous, particularly about the houſes, and a large green lizard ſomething like a guano, but ſmaller. The natives never deſtroy either of theſe, but ſuffer them to run about unmoleſted; and when any of our people through wantonneſs killed any of them (which frequently was the caſe) they always expreſſed their diſapprobation, by telling us it was very bad. Their birds are ducks, herons both white and grey, kingsfiſhers, rails, doves and pigeons, parroquets, cuckows, and a very ſmall ſpecies of martin. The ſea affords variety of fiſh, but they did not appear to be a very great article of food, at leaſt during our ſtay. Both the green and hawk's-bill turtle are found here, and muſt be rather plentiful, if we may judge from the quantity of tortoiſe-ſhell which they expoſed to ſale. There are variety of ſhell fiſh, and ſome of the moſt beautiful little crabs that can be conceived.

The people of both ſexes are tall, well made, and exactly proportioned. We did not ſee one inſtance of deformity amongſt them. The men are in general above the middle ſize, but now and then you meet with one below that ſtandard; the women are tall in proportion, and rather maſculine. Their complexion is dark olive, but in thoſe who are expoſed to the effects of the weather it is much darker, while thoſe whoſe ſuperior ſtation in life entitles them to a greater degree of indulgence, are conſiderably lighter. The natives of Fidgi of both ſexes are greatly darker than any of the other iſlanders, their complexion nearly approaching to black.

Their features are generally good; their eyes bright and lively, their noſe ſomewhat flat, their mouth and lips well proportioned, the former not being too wide, nor the latter too thick, and their teeth as white as ivory.

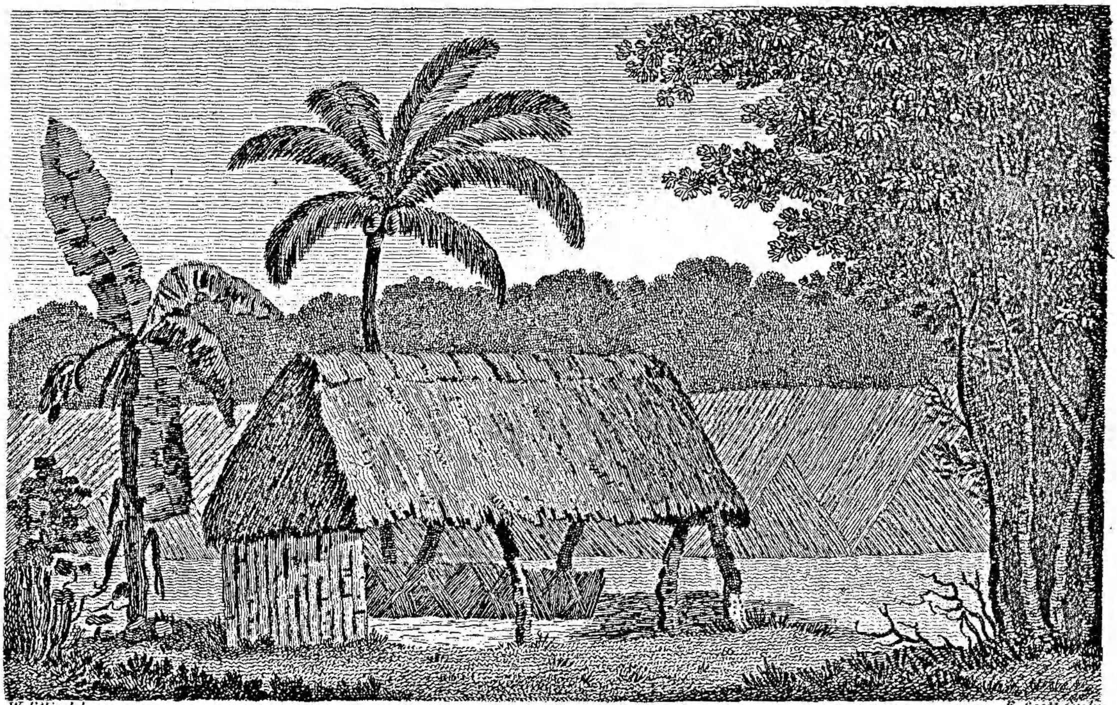
Their hair is originally black, but both men and women have a method of dreſſing it with lime and other materials, which render it of various colours, brown, yellow, white, &c. We once ſaw an old man whoſe hair was of the deepeſt carrotty colour.

Long hair is a mark of diſtinction, and none are permitted to wear it but the principal people. The agee girls and women let it hang in ringlets down to their waiſts, and the men likewiſe wear it in the ſame form. This is the only place where we ſaw ſhaving in faſhion, for the men, particularly the agees, are very anxious to free themſelves from their beards. This is performed with two ſhells whoſe outward ſurface is rather rough, and by rubbing the edges together, at the ſame time incloſing the beard between the ſhells, they cut it tolerably cloſe. This operation however is rather painful and tedious, and obſerving how expeditious and clean we performed it, they were deſirous of trying it alſo; and it ſo far exceeded their expectations that ſcarce a day paſſed without plenty of cuſtomers.

They have a cuſtom of anointing their heads, necks and boſoms, with an oil which they call *monoi*; it is ſqueezed from the kernel of the cocoa-nut, and afterwards perfumed very highly with various ſweet-ſcented flowers and herbs.

Both men and women are marked or tattowed; the former from the ſhort ribs to the knee, and ſometimes lower, the latter upon the inſide of the hand. Some of theſe marks ſeem to be to diſtinguiſh the different tribes to which they belong, the other poſſibly are for ornament. The inſtruments uſed upon this occaſion are nearly the ſame as at Otaheitee.

Their cloathing conſiſts of mats of different degrees of fineneſs, and cloth made of the Chineſe paper mulberry-tree. Both men and women dreſs much alike. The better ſort always wear a great deal more than their inferiors: their dreſs conſiſts of one large piece of cloth wrapped ſeveral times round their middle, and tied with a ſaſh or girdle of the ſame kind; the upper part is plaited or folded, ſo that it may be pulled up to the ſhoulders if neceſſary, the bottom part reaches below the calf. Over this they put a fine mat ſimilar to what the natives of Otaheitee call *pooerou*. They wear no covering upon their feet or legs. Round their necks they frequently put a kind of ruff or necklace of flowers, or leaves of various kinds which are generally choſen for their fragrance or colour: theſe ornaments they call *cau-colla*. Rings of tortoiſe-



W. Ellis del.

E. Scott sculp.

tortoiſe-ſhell are very generally worn both by men and women.

The houſes of theſe people are of various ſizes and dimenſions, according to the wealth and degree of the poſſeſſor. The roof, which is elevated upon ſix or eight poſts, is well thatched, either with the branches of the coco nut tree, or with thoſe of the palm-tree. Some are open all round, but the major part are incloſed on one ſide. The richer kind of people build their houſes in the midſt of their plantations, which are ſometimes of conſiderable extent, and ſurrounded with a fence of bamboo. To theſe you enter by a door tied to a poſt with a cord made of the braided fibres of the coco nut; this opens and ſhuts as if hung upon hinges. The floor is always covered with mats, upon which they ſit in the day, and ſleep in the night. Their furniture is not conſiderable; it conſiſts of a large wooden diſh, in which they mix their awa; baſkets of different ſorts and ſizes, in which they put their combs, fiſh-hooks, and tools; two or three ſtools, which they uſe as pillows, a bundle or two of cloth, and frequently a tame pigeon upon a ſtick.

As theſe iſlands produce the ſame articles of food as the Society Iſles, of courſe there can be no great variation in their manner of living. Bread-fruit, yams, plantains, and tarrow, generally conſtitute their meals; for though they have hogs and fowls, they are only eaten upon particular occaſions. Their method of cooking them is the ſame as at Otaheitee. Sometimes they dreſs a few fiſh; theſe they boil in the green leaves of the plantain-tree, which ſerve as a bag to hold both fiſh and water. Having tied them up, they wrap them again in three or four other leaves, and place them upon a number of ſtones made hot for that purpoſe, till they are done ſufficiently. They then take out the fiſh, and pour the ſoup into little cups made of the green plantain leaf, of which every one in company has one, and as they eat the fiſh they drink a little of the ſoup, till both are expended. They are not very nice in cleaning the fiſh, but eat bones, guts, and ſcales all together.

Their drink is water or coco nut milk in general: but the better ſort of people always take a draught of awa before they eat; we never ſaw them uſe it at any other time, and, even then, they are far more moderate than the people of Otaheitee, and make it in a much cleanlier manner.

There is a law or cuſtom here, which forbids, at particular times, a perſon of inferior rank to eat in the preſence of his ſuperiors, and even Powlahow is not exempt from it; for upon the unexpected appearance of thoſe two before mentioned people, whilſt he has been eating, he has immediately deſiſted, and put the victuals on one ſide, apparently a good deal confuſed.

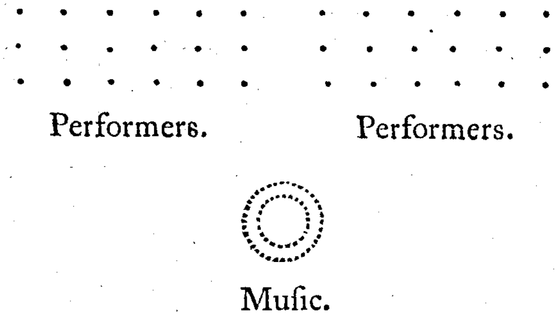
They riſe as ſoon as it is light, and the firſt thing they do, is to waſh themſelves in the ſea, and afterwards in freſh water, which they collect in ſmall wells or pits dug for that purpoſe. After this they ſit down to their breakfaſt, which, as has been before obſerved, generally conſiſts of bread-fruit, yams, or plantains: this ended, every one amuſes himſelf as he thinks proper. If there is any buſineſs going forward, that of courſe becomes the object; if not, they ſit and diſcourſe of indifferent things.

As the heat of the day comes on, they for the moſt part ſleep. Their firſt meal being ſo early, they generally eat again about eleven, and in the afternoon about four. At eight in the evening, or as ſoon as it becomes dark, they ſup, and ſoon after retire to reſt.

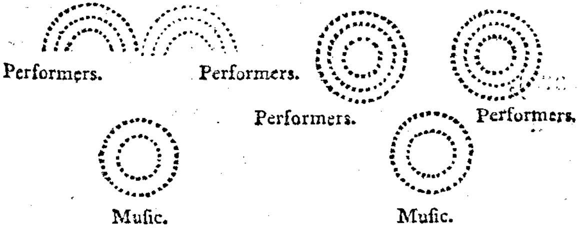
Their amuſements are dancing, wreſtling, ſinging, and boxing, at all which they are very expert. The dances of the women are generally if not always in the evening, and by torch-light. Upon this occaſion they are always well-dreſſed: their heads are decorated with wreaths, compoſed of a plant ſomething like ivy; round their waiſt they wear an elegant piece of cloth, and over it a broad fringe of plantain leaves. The whole of this dreſs is very becoming, and ſets off their perſons, which are naturally good, to the greateſt advantage. Their movements are very regular, and they keep excellent time to their muſic, which conſiſts of pieces of bamboo of various lengths, cut off at one of the joints. Theſe the men, who perform the inſtrumental part, hold in their hands, and ſtrike one end againſt the ground; this emits a hollow ſound, deep in proportion to its length. One man likewiſe holds in one hand a piece of bamboo about three feet long, and with the other ſtrikes it with a ſmall piece of ſtick, keeping time with the other men; this muſic is far from being diſagreeable. The muſicians ſit together, forming a ſmall circle, and the women dance round them, and their attitudes and motions are beyond deſcription.

The men very rarely intermix in the women's dances, though we once ſaw Polahow in the midſt of them, and, notwithſtanding his corpulency, he kept as good time as the beſt of them. The dances of the men differ very little from thoſe of the women; but in their grand heivahs they ſometimes perform together. The muſicians in this caſe are more numerous, and moſt of them ſing, but not all in the ſame key, for they have different parts, as we have of treble, baſe, tenor, &c.; and the harmony which ariſes when the muſic and ſinging are joined is very pleaſing. Beſides the bamboo they have a kind of drum, formed out of the hollowed trunk of a tree, upon which they ſtrike with wooden drumſticks: this, ſtrange as it may appear, adds much to the agreeableneſs of the whole.

Their grand heivahs ſeem to be divided into different acts: they firſt begin with a dance of the men, which continues near a quarter of an hour; and when finiſhed, another large party of performers come in, and divide themſelves into two companies, not forming a circle as in the dances, but a line, with the muſic in front, ſomething like this:



Every performer has a ſmall wooden inſtrument in his hand, about three feet long, ſhaped ſomething like a baker's peel. As ſoon as the muſic ſtrikes up, they alſo begin and perform an incredible number of motions with this inſtrument, all moving as if only one man, with great quickneſs and in exact time to the muſic. After this has continued about ſeven or eight minutes, they all, by very gradual and indeed almoſt imperceptible degrees, change places, ſo that thoſe who were behind are now in front, and thoſe who were in front are now in the middle, obſerving the different attitudes and motions with the inſtruments throughout the time. This continues till they have all regained their proper places, when the two companies recede from each other ſtill farther, and ſoon after two men make their appearance, dreſſed in a very antic manner, with each a kind of club in his hand. The various motions, actions and attitudes, which theſe two harlequins put themſelves into, together with the regularity and exactneſs they obſerve, are ſuch as cannot be deſcribed, and even if they could, perhaps would not be credited. During their performance, the two companies remain in-active, but as ſoon as the harlequins are retired, they begin again, but vary in their performances, deſcribing circles and ſemicircles in this manner,



and exchange their places as before; in ſhort, the whole of their performance is ſuch as does the greateſt credit, not only to thoſe who bear a part in it, but to the people in general.

Their wreſtling matches are much like thoſe of Otaheitee, as is their mode of challenging, viz. by ſtriking with the hollow of their right hand upon the bended joint of their left elbow, which produces a loud hollow ſound, ſomething reſembling that of a child's pop-gun, it will therefore be unneceſſary to ſay more about it.

When a man gives a challenge to box, he throws out his arms, firſt his right and then his left, ſeveral times, as if ſtriking at ſomebody, at the ſame time dancing as it were round the circle (for a circle is moſt commonly formed by the ſpectators), if any one accepts it, he gets up and does the ſame, after which they fall to, and generally give and receive very ſevere blows, till one or other owns himſelf vanquiſhed; but if one chances to knock down the other, the conteſt is immediately at an end.

The victor, either in wreſtling or boxing, receives a kind of plaudit from the company. The women frequently engage in theſe boxing matches, and ſometimes deal heavy blows. But this kind of diverſion amongſt the female ſex did not altogether coincide with our ideas of delicacy, and we expreſſed our diſapprobation of it, which had ſo good an effect, that we never ſaw it a ſecond time.

Another kind of diverſion they have is ſomething ſimilar to our cudgel playing, only in lieu of ſticks they uſe clubs made of the bottom part of the branch of the coco nut tree, which is hard and very tough. With theſe they will engage each other for a conſiderable time: they ſhew great dexterity in warding off and parrying the blows of their antagoniſts, but they ſometimes get terribly banged about the head, and in the courſe of the fight muſt ſuffer ſeverely; but ſuch is their great good-nature, that we never ſaw an inſtance of a blow being given in anger.

Theſe ſports, as well as the before mentioned dance, are ſeldom exhibited but upon particular days, for the entertainment of the king and his nobility, many of whom frequently engage in them, and ſometimes Powlahow lays his dignity aſide for a time, and dances with his women.

Their ſinging has been occaſionally mentioned before, but their common ſongs are very different from thoſe ſung at their heivahs. In theſe there are no ſeparate parts, but the whole is ſung in one tune: they have a greater variety of notes than the people of Otaheitee, and thoſe who ſing (generally two or three girls, and ſometimes a man and a girl) ſnap their fingers throughout the whole of the ſong, which ſeems to be by way of keeping time.

Their muſical inſtruments are drums, flutes, pieces of bamboo, as before obſerved, and a kind of pipe ſimilar to the *ſyrinx*, or *fiſtula agreſtis* of the ancients. The flutes are made of a joint of bamboo, about eighteen inches long, and cloſed at both ends. They have four holes, one at each end, and on each ſide, ſo that either end may be uſed: to three of theſe holes they apply the middle finger of the left hand, and the thumb and middle finger of the right; the other they apply to the right or left noſtril, as at Otaheitee. The tunes which they play upon them, though not various (at leaſt our ears were not nice enough to diſtinguiſh any very material difference) are both pleaſing and muſical.

The pipes are compoſed of ſeven or eight joints of reed of unequal lengths, and ſecured together by the fibres of the coco nut. Though this inſtrument was very common amongſt them, we ſeldom ſaw them uſe it.

Chaſtity among theſe iſlanders is not much regarded as a virtue; for, except moſt of the Agee girls, who were proof againſt every temptation that was offered them, there were very few that had the leaſt objection to a private interview.

The manufactures are cloth, mats, and baſkets. The former is made of the Chineſe paper mulberry-tree, and undergoes the ſame proceſs as at Otaheitee, only the inſtrument made uſe of in beating it out is not grooved but plain. They print it in various patterns, with a kind of ſtamp made of reed or cane; the colours they make uſe of are brown and black, but both very indifferent. They have alſo a light yellow dye, but we never had an opportunity of learning its compoſition. Their mats are of two or three different kinds; one is made of a ſpecies of *pandanus*, the ſame as that of Otaheitee; another of a ſpecies of *hibiſcus*, and a third either of the leaves of the coco nut or palm-tree. Thoſe made of the *hibiſcus* are the ſtrongeſt and by far the fineſt; they are chiefly worn by the better ſort of people, and are fringed all round. The people of the Society Iſles call theſe Pooerou, the name at theſe iſlands is Naffenaffe.

Of their baſkets they have various kinds, which differ greatly in their ſhape, uſe, and ſize. Some of them are made of the ſame materials as their mats, but the beſt and ſtrongeſt are formed of the twiſted or rather braided fibres of the coco nut, which they dye black and brown in different ſhades. Some of theſe they decorate with a kind of white bead, and rows of red feathers, which make them look elegant enough.

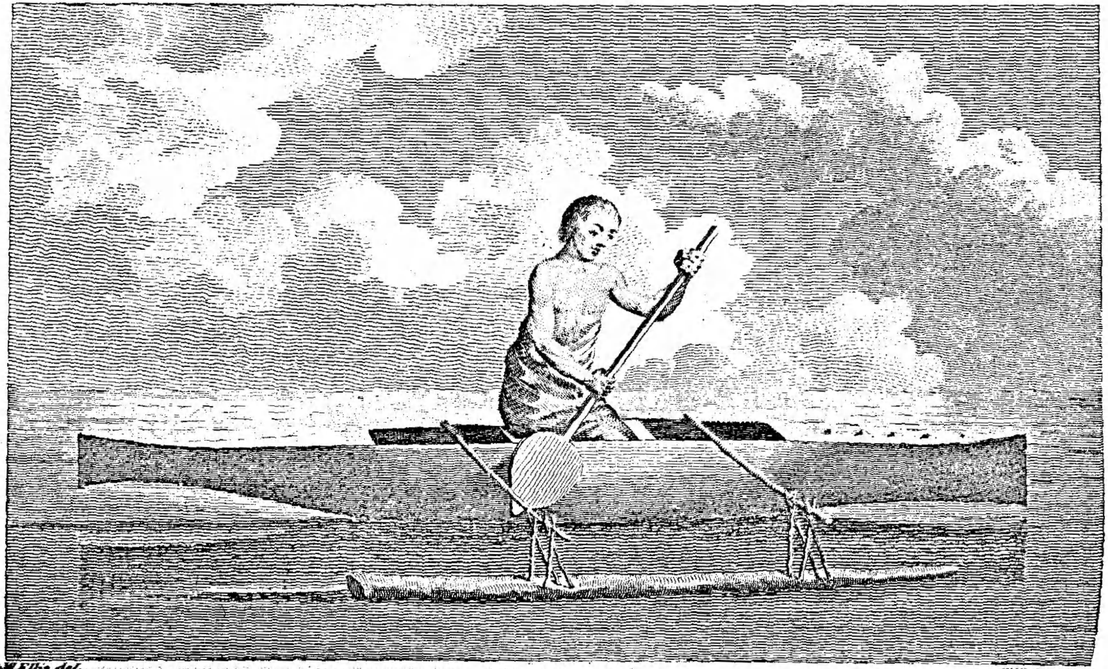
Of the coco nut fibres they alſo make ropes and lines of different degrees of thickneſs. That of which they make their fiſhing nets is as fine as ſmall packthread, but this is the production of the bark of another tree. Some of theſe nets are of the ſame form as our caſting nets, and uſed in the ſame manner; in lieu of lead they faſten ſtones round the bottom: the needles with which they make them are alſo like our's.

Their fiſh-hooks are much like thoſe of Otaheitee; their ſhank is compoſed of mother of pearl, and the hook part is frequently tortoiſe-ſhell.

Their tools are hatchets of various ſizes, made of a hard dark-coloured ſtone; files, made of fiſh-ſkin; and a drill, made exactly upon the ſame plan as thoſe uſed by our blackſmiths.

The canoes of theſe iſlands are, without exception, the beſt we ever ſaw: the double ones are made large enough to carry fifty or ſixty people, and ſail at a great rate. Upon them they generally fix or erect a hut or ſhed which is for the reception of the maſter and his wives and family. They are all made of the bread fruit-tree, which is an exceeding light wood: the workmanſhip is very neat, and they appear on the outſide as if compoſed of one ſolid piece: but upon cloſer inſpection, you find that they conſiſt of a great number, which fit exactly one with the other, and by means of a ledge on the inſide are ſecured together with coco nut line. The ſingle ones are furniſhed with an outrigger. The large canoes are taken great care of, and generally put into a houſe built on purpoſe.

The burial places of theſe people are called Affia-tooka, and every family of



W. Ellis del. W. Walker sculp.

diſtinction has one belonging to it. Theſe repoſitories of the dead are generally erected in ſome retired ſpot, and ſurrounded with trees of a particular kind, ſuch as the *caſuarina* and *athrodactylis*. The ground is elevated in the form of a mount, about three or four feet high, upon the top of which are built three or four cloſe huts with a ſmall door-way: in theſe they depoſit the bodies, and leave them. The mount is ſometimes encloſed with a wooden fence, and ſometimes with ſtones. Theſe places are in general about one hundred and fifty or two hundred feet in circumference, but ſome are much larger and very neatly finiſhed.

Of the ceremonies attending a funeral we can ſay but very little, as only one, that we know of, occurred during our ſtay, and of this only one of our people got an accidental view. He was deſirous of ſeeing the whole, but they were quite averſe to an indulgence of that kind. Upon this occaſion, he ſaid ſeveral of them, both men and women, wore a wreath, made of a twining kind of plant, round their necks and waiſts; and by their lamentations and geſtures he judged them to be relations of the deceaſed.

All the information we could get of the natives relative to theſe affairs is, that upon the death of a perſon, all the relations aſſemble together, and make a diſmal howling, beating themſelves upon their cheek-bones with their fiſts till the blood runs. This is looked upon as a great mark of affection, and the more they torture themſelves in this manner the greater eſteem they are ſuppoſed to have entertained for the deceaſed. They alſo cut off the firſt joint of their little-finger; the right-hand finger is dedicated to the father, the left to the mother. Cutting off the hair is alſo another of their mourning ceremonies.

Theſe people believe the exiſtence of the ſoul in a ſeparate ſtate, and that after death they go to a very pleaſant place, much ſuperior to that which they enjoy during life; for they ſay it abounds with every good thing they can poſſibly wiſh for: but theſe bliſsful abodes are, according to them entirely for the reſidence of the agees, thoſe of inferior rank not being ſuffered to have any ſhare in them.

The form of government, with reſpect to its foundation, is much the ſame as at the Society Iſles; but it is carried on with much greater order and regularity, and a ſuperior degree of reſpect is ſhewed to the king. No one dares to addreſs him without firſt paying him homage, which is done by kneeling down and bowing the head to his feet, which the perſon afterwards gently taps once with the fingers and knuckles of each hand, after which he ſeats himſelf at a diſtance, and then proceeds to relate his buſineſs. The agees always ſit at a diſtance, forming a ſemi-circle, the king being in front with four or five of his attendants behind him, and generally an old woman near him, with a fan.

The crown is hereditary, and has been in the preſent family for five generations. The king's authority, though abſolute in almoſt every reſpect, is ſtill in ſome meaſure curbed by Feenow and Tubow: the former, Powlahow told us, could diſpoſſeſs him of his throne, and kill him, if he was a bad man. By which he probably meant, that if he neglected the duty of his ſtation, or acted in a manner that would prove prejudicial to the good or welfare of the ſtate, Feenow could lawfully depoſe and kill him. Tubow is likewiſe a man of the firſt conſequence; his buſineſs is to inſpect the wenuah taboo, that is to examine the ſtate of the iſlands with reſpect to their produce, and if there is a probability of any one ſpecies of proviſion falling ſhort (which ſometimes is the caſe, particularly when the ſeaſon proves dry), he is to taboo it, or iſſue an order to forbid its being touched till the next ſeaſon. By theſe wiſe precautions they are entirely diveſted of the fear of want. Some few days before our departure from Amſterdam almoſt every thing was tabooed, as our long ſtay had pretty well drained them of every thing they could ſpare.

The lower claſs of people are kept in great ſubjection by the chiefs, who in fact do juſt as they pleaſe with them, and ſeem to regard them as an abject ſet of beings, over whom they have an unbounded right. During our ſtay at Anamooka, immediately after the market for the day was over, one of the agees ordered the croud to diſperſe, and every one to retire to his home; which they not doing ſo readily as he thought they ought, he caught up a large ſtick, and fell upon them moſt furiouſly. One man was knocked down, and when taken away was to all appearance dead. The agee took no manner of notice of it, and walked away as unconcerned as if nothing had happened.

On the day our marines were exerciſed on ſhore at Happi, Feenow, who was willing to know what execution our muſkets would do at a diſtance, deſired them to fire at a canoe that chanced to be paſſing by, and kill the man who was in her. This ſtrange requeſt was certainly not complied with, and we remonſtrated with him as well as we could, on the cruelty of killing a man who had committed no fault; his anſwer was, that he was only a ſlave and fit for nothing elſe.

Whilſt we lay at Middleburgh, a man ſitting very unconcerned, and looking on amidſt the croud of people that ſurrounded our market-place on ſhore, was on a ſudden attacked by three or four people armed with clubs, who broke one of his thighs, fractured his ſkull in a terrible manner, and in ſhort diſpatched him. This affair ſhocked us a good deal, as it had the appearance of barbarity and cruelty in the higheſt degree; but, upon enquiry, we found that the man had carried on an intrigue with the wife of an agee, who, in conſequence of diſcovering it, had ſent ſome of his people with orders to diſpatch him wherever they found him.

Theſe people are ſeldom at war except with the natives of Fidgi (an iſland mentioned before), whom they are much afraid of, and in general get terribly worſted. They told us theſe people were cannibals; an account which can ſcarce be credited, conſidering the amazing fertility of the iſland, which our friends told us abounded with every good thing. This report however was not confined to a few people, for every one, upon being aſked, agreed in the ſtory.

The weapons uſed at the Friendly Iſles, are clubs and ſpears: the former made of the *caſurina*, or toa-tree, which is an exceeding hard and heavy wood, and are in general curiouſly carved; their length is from three to four feet. The ſpears are of different lengths, and barbed in various directions with the bones of the ſting-ray, which muſt render them a moſt deſtructive weapon. They have likewiſe bows and arrows, but never uſe them in war, confining them entirely to ſhooting at a mark. The natives of Fidgi, on the contrary, make them a principal weapon, and it is to this alone that theſe people aſcribe their ſuperiority; which circumſtance one would think might induce them at leaſt to try the experiment.

The weather, during our ſtay at Anamooka, was very unſettled, and part of the time it rained very hard; the winds were variable. At Amſterdam it was in general fine, but at Middleburgh we had much rain, with freſh gales from the N. E.

CHAP. X.

Leave the Friendly Iſles—the Diſcovery carries away her main-top-maſt in a ſquall—diſcover an iſland—ſome of the natives put off—a ſhort deſcription of them and the iſland—continue our courſe to Otaheitee—and anchor in Ohitapeah harbour—receive intelligence of the Spaniards having been there—who had erected a houſe and croſs on ſhore—leave three of their people there, and depart for Lima—they return, and after a ſhort ſtay take away thoſe they had left—and again depart for Lima—Orette, the friend of Mr. Bougainville, viſits us—ſome account of the place—the Morai of Wyeatuah—ungenerous behaviour of the Spaniards reſpecting us—leave Ohitapeah, and arrive at Matavai bay—Otoo viſits the captains.

ON July the 17th at noon, the extremes of Middleburgh bore from N. N. E. to S. E. by S. our diſtance from the neareſt ſhore about three miles. On

the

the 20th, the variation of the compaſs was 8 deg. 51 min. eaſterly. From this time to the 28th, nothing material occurred; but on the 29th, at half paſt ſix in the evening, a violent and heavy ſquall came on, which carried away the Diſcovery's main-top-maſt. This reduced them to the neceſſity of putting up a jury-maſt, which job was not completed till Auguſt the 2d. in the afternoon. Auguſt the 7th, we found the variation to be 7 min. eaſterly, and on the 8th, at half paſt eleven in the morning, being in latitude 23 deg. 57 S. and longitude 209 deg. 52 min E. we ſaw land bearing N. N. E. of which the Diſcovery made the ſignal to the Reſolution. At noon, it was about ten or twelve leagues diſtant; but not being able to reach it, in any reaſonable time, we ſtood upon our tacks for the night. The next day we ſtood in for it, and at eight ſounded, and got ground from eighteen to thirty fathoms, the bottom fine ſand, about a quarter of a mile from a break in the reef which ſurrounded the iſland.

Some of the natives put off in two of their canoes, and came within about a hundred yards of the ſhips; they made many ſigns to us, and their language ſeemed to reſemble that of the Society Iſles. By their ſigns they ſeemed to wiſh us to depart; one of them ſounded a conk ſhell, and at the ſame time the reſt brandiſhed their paddles, rather in a threatening and menacing manner. We endeavoured by every means to perſuade them to come on board, but without effect.

They were ſtout well made people, of the dark olive complexion; their hair was black and long, and ſome few had it tied in a knot upon the top of their heads. Three or four had large pearl oyſter ſhells ſuſpended from their necks by way of ornament. The natives on ſhore appeared to be numerous, and ſome of them were clothed in white; one or two of thoſe in the canoes had only a ſmall ſtrip of cloth round their waiſt.

Their canoes were neat; the gunwale was decorated with white ſhells, which had a pretty effect: their paddles were like thoſe of the Friendly Iſles, only not terminating in a point, but on the contrary quite round.

The iſland had a pleaſant appearance; the interior parts roſe in moderately high hills which were covered with verdure to the top. Along the ſhores were borders of low land which were well clothed with trees, particularly the coco nut tree.

Off the weſtern ſide there was a break in the reef apparently wide enough to admit a ſhip with ſafety. The natives call this iſland Toobooi. At nine we made ſail and bore away, keeping a N. E. courſe, our obſerved latitude at noon being 23 deg. 9 min. S.

On the 13th of Auguſt, at half paſt five in the morning, we ſaw the iſland Maitea bearing N. by W. and at ſeven deſcried Otaheitee, bearing W. by N. ½ N. At noon the extremes of Otaheitee-ete, or the leſſer iſland, bore W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and S. W. by W. diſtant about ſix leagues; our obſerved latitude being 17 deg. 44 min. S. At ſix Ohitapeah harbour bore S. W. diſtant two miles. As we approached the land, the winds became light and variable, being affected by the ſurrounding mountains, Captain Cook therefore thought it moſt adviſeable to ſtand off and on for the night, and take the advantage of the morning to get in. At day light, the entrance of Ohitapeah harbour bore S. by W. ſix or ſeven miles diſtant, and at ten we anchored, in thirty-two fathoms, and ſoon after moored ſhip.

The ſhips were ſcarcely anchored, before numbers of the inhabitants came off to us, and preſently recollected ſome of their old acquaintance, at the ſight of whom they expreſſed great joy and ſatiſfaction; and it might be ſuppoſed, that they were equally happy in ſeeing their countryman Omai returned after ſo long a voyage.—On the contrary, they ſcarce took any notice of him, and had he not dealt out his preſents of red feathers, &c. pretty largely, it is poſſible they would not have ſpoke to him. The next day, after ſome general enquiries, we found that Oberea and Wyeatuah (who was king of Otaheiteee-te, or Tiarraboo, when captain Cook was laſt here) were dead; and that ſome other ſhips had been there ſome time after the Reſolution's departure. This information of courſe excited our curioſity a good deal, and we enquired more particulalry into it. They told us, that about the latter end of the year 1774, there arrived two ſhips from Remah (by which we ſuppoſed they meant Lima), that the people who came in them ſtaid between three and four months, and had erected a houſe on ſhore. During their reſidence, the commander, whoſe name was Oridde, died, and was buried on ſhore ſome little diſtance from the houſe. At the departure of the ſhips, they took with them four of the natives, who voluntarily offered to go, and left behind them a young man called Marteemo, and two prieſts.

At the end of about two months they returned and brought with them only one of the natives; two having died at Lima, and the other chooſing to remain there. They appeared this ſecond time to be in a great hurry, and after a ſhort ſtay (during which time they were employed in wooding and watering), took back Marteemo and the two prieſts, leaving ſtrict orders with Wyeatuah to take care of the houſe, &c. as they intended to return in a ſhort time; but however they never made their appearance again.

Theſe were the heads of our information, which, as Omai was our interpreter, might come ſomething near the truth.

The houſe, which was a wooden one, was divided into two rooms, one behind the other; the windows, or rather portholes, opened and ſhut in the inſide with ſliders. It is likely that the houſe was made at the place from whence the ſhips came, as every plank was numbered. The furniture was very inconſiderable, conſiſting of a table, two or three ſtools, an old tub, an old gold laced hat, and a few other trifling articles. At ſome diſtance, in the front of the houſe, upon the ſpot where the commander was buried, was erected a large croſs with this carved inſcription upon it, *Chriſtus vincit, Carolus tertius imperat.* Captain Cook ordered it to be taken down, and the following words to be put upon it, *Georgius tertius annis* 1767, 69, 74, 79.

Marteemo, as far as we could underſtand, was a very ſenſible, clever young man, and held in much eſteem by the natives. It ſeems probable, that he was left there with a view of learning the language, manners, and cuſtoms of the country; in the former he told us he was very intelligent. The two prieſts no doubt were to endeavour to make converts, but they did not appear to be very ſucceſsful, for we could diſcover no traces of the good effect of their apoſtolical miſſion; and it is not unlikely, but that the reverend fathers might be ſo far led aſtray by the good things of the iſland, and the condeſcenſion of its female inhabitants, as totally to forget the buſineſs they were ſent upon.

The man who had been at Lima, was frequently on board the ſhips, and very readily anſwered any queſtions we put to him relative to his treatment, &c. there. He appeared to like the Spaniards very well, but frequently expreſſed his ſurprize at their not having red feathers (which are with theſe people the *ſummum bonum* and extent of all their wiſhes) as well as us. In this reſpect we were very fortunate, having laid in a good ſtock at the Friendly Iſles. Among many of our daily viſitors was a man called Orettee, who was an old taio of M. Bougainville's: ſeldom a day paſſed without this man's dining on board the ſhips, where he generally contrived to get drunk. Of our female viſitors, a woman whoſe name was Poorahi was the principal: ſhe became captain Clerke's taio, and exchanged names with him. She generally had a fine young girl with her, whoſe name was Outopah, of a moſt winning and engaging behaviour.

As our ſtay at this place was not of any long continuance, getting out the Diſcovery's maſt was poſtponed till we ſhould arrive at Matavai Bay. We were however conſtantly employed in getting in water, and ſtarting that which we took in at the Friendly Iſles: our armourers too were continually employed at the forge, in making trade of various ſorts for the purchaſing of proviſions.

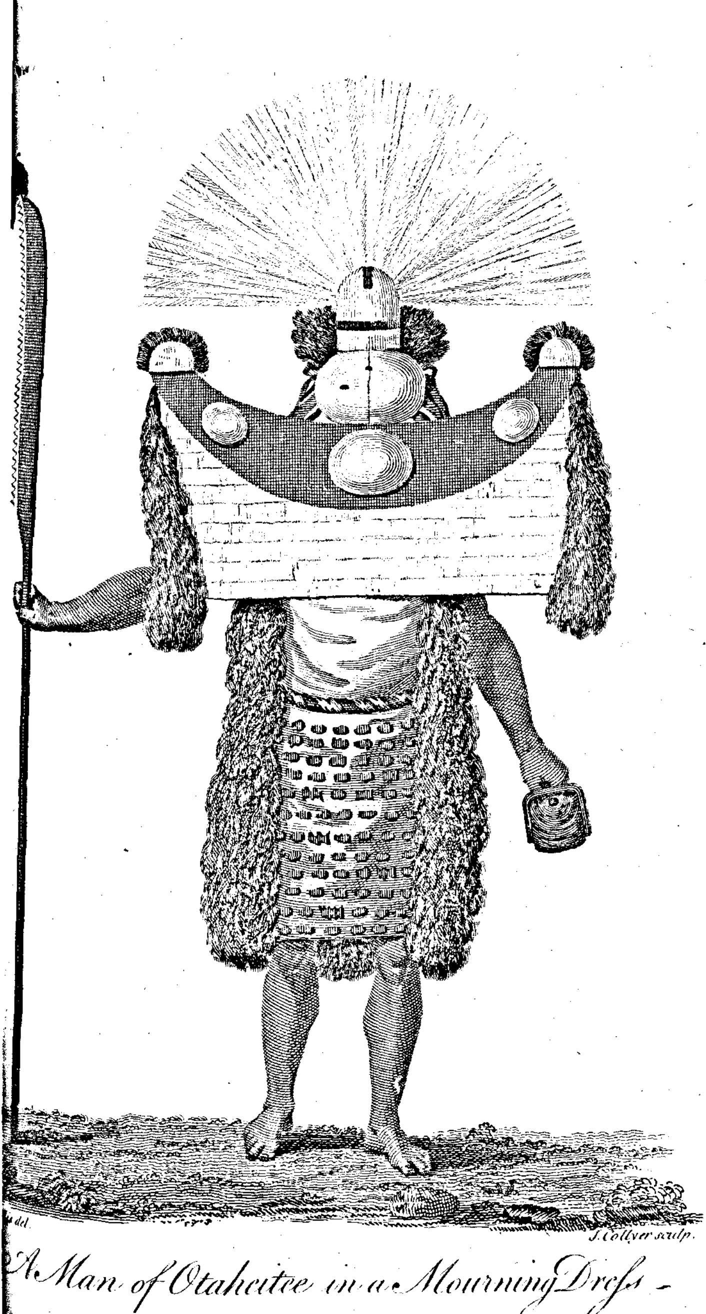
The face of the country here exhibits a very different appearance from that of the Friendly Iſles. Mountains and vallies, hills and dales, and in ſhort every thing conſpire to form the moſt romantic views imaginable; while at Amſterdam, &c. you had only one continued tract of low level land. At a little diſtance from the ſhips was a remarkably pleaſant valley, which ran winding between the mountains to a great diſtance; in the midſt of it is a fine ſtream of water, which at the head of the valley takes its riſe from a beautiful caſcade that appears to burſt out of the rocks.

On each ſide the ſtream are placed the houſes of the natives, interſperſed with plantations of bananas, coco nuts, bread-fruit, and a kind of apple tree: the lofty hills on each ſide, whoſe tops reach beyond the clouds, the variety of birds which are continually flying from place to place, and the noiſe of the falling water, re-echoed by the ſurrounding hills, afford a ſcene ſtriking beyond deſcription.

Ohitapeah is the principal place of Otaheitee-ete, being the reſidence of the king and moſt of the principal people. The preſent king is a minor, and ſon to the late Wyeatuah; he is about ten years old, and is a fine lively ſenſible boy.

The morai of the late king ſtands upon the banks of a rivulet not far from the Spaniſh houſe; it is very neatly fenced in with bamboo, and the corpſe is placed upon a kind of bier, and wrapped up in a great quantity of cloth, over which are ſpread ſeveral pieces of ſcarlet woollen cloth, which had been given him by the Spaniards. His houſe is at a little diſtance from the morai, but almoſt tumbled to pieces; for theſe people never repair or live in the houſe of any one that is dead; that and every thing belonging to it being raa, as they call it; which word has nearly the ſame meaning as taboo at the Friendly Iſles, and means unlawful or forbid. This word is uſed on many occaſions; for inſtance, if you aſk any of the women to eat while the men are preſent, they will ſhake their heads, and ſay it is maa raa, or meat which they are forbid to eat.

Theſe good people, notwithſtanding they ſupplied us very largely with every produce of the place, yet in ſeveral re-



del.

J. Collyer sculp.

A Man of Otaheitee in a Mourning Dreſs –

Publiſhed Decr 14th 1781, by G. Robinſon.

ſpects had loſt that degree of cordiality for us, which was experienced in the courſe of the former voyage. This we had great reaſon to attribute to the inſinuations and mal-practices of the Spaniards, who (if the natives are to be relied on) took every method to leſſen that friendſhip and good opinion, which they ſaw theſe people entertained of us, by repreſenting us as a ſet of idle, piratical people, who lived entirely by plunder; that we had no place of abode, but were obliged to cruize about from place to place to procure a living, with many other circumſtances equally falſe and unjuſt.

The behaviour of the Spaniards during their ſtay was truly characteriſtic; ſcarce any of the natives were permitted to enter the great cabin, and not a woman was ſuffered to come on board; the commander never went on ſhore without a guard to receive him, which with the advantage they had over us in fine ſcarlet cloths (for the people of Otaheitee, like moſt others, are fond of ſhew), and the great ſtate they always aſſumed, abſolutely got the better of our poor friends, and they looked upon them almoſt as a ſuperior race of beings.

However we in ſome meaſure overcame their prejudices againſt us, and by dealing out our preſents (particularly red feathers) in a judicious manner, they readily confeſſed we were more valuable taios than the Dons.

The Spaniards left behind ſeveral hogs, goats, and dogs, and likewiſe a bull and cow: the latter died, but the bull was kept at Oparre, the reſidence of Otoo, and was really a fine animal.

We ſtaid at this place till the 23d inſtant, when we weighed our anchors, and ſtood out of the harbour, at nine in the morning, with ſeveral of the natives on board as paſſengers.

At noon the N. W. point of Otaheitee bore N. W. by N. diſtant about three leagues, and the eaſtermoſt land in ſight

S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. The Reſolution, being a good way a-head, got into Matavia Bay before it was dark; but night coming on, and having very ſqually weather, the Diſcovery ſtood off and on, it being more prudent to take the advantage of the morning to get in, rather than run the riſque of getting too near the reef, which might have proved a dangerous affair. The next day, as ſoon as it became light, ſhe ſtood in for the bay, and at eleven let go her anchor in five fathom of water, a ſandy bottom, about half a mile from the neareſt ſhore.

We now ſet about the neceſſary preparations for getting out the Diſcovery's maſt; and as captain Cook intended to reſide here ſome time, the aſtronomers tents, inſtruments, and other apparatus, were got on ſhore, and erected upon point Venus. The ſhips tents were alſo pitched, and the marines, with the coopers, and all the empty caſks, with various other affairs, were ſent on ſhore.

The next day, Otoo with his brothers and ſiſters, viſited the captains. He is full ſix feet high, and raw-boned, but not fat. Enue, who is his ſecond brother, is a fine handſome young fellow, but greatly addicted to drinking awa; the youngeſt is about ſeventeen, a handſome youth. His three ſiſters are very plain women; the youngeſt, whoſe name is Terrara, is a very agreeable lively girl.

CHAP. XI.

Omai finds his ſiſter married—her huſband's behaviour—he is led into temptation, and turned out of the ſhip—the natives very ingenious at fabricating ſtories—an inſtance of it—the people of Otaheitee engaged in a war with thoſe of Imaio—the cauſe of that war—a human ſacrifice is offered to the god of war by Tohaw—ſome deſcription of the place of ſacrifice—Tohaw and his friends Potatow and Tapaow, ſail for Imaio—Otoo's behaviour—is threatened by Tohaw—we ſail for Imaio—the natives ſteal two of our goats—arrival at Huaheine—loſe one of our quadrants—the thief taken—threatens Omai, and is again confined—but makes his eſcape—arrival at Uriatea—two of our people leave the ſhips—are at length taken—leave Uriatea, and ſteer for Bora-bora—ſome account of the ſociety of Arreois.

OMAI found his ſiſter married and ſettled here, who received him very cordially and affectionately, but her huſband, who was quite of the inferior ſet of

people,

people, would not condeſcend or deign to ſpeak to him. But he ſoon altered his behaviour, for finding that Omai was poſſeſſed of many valuables, he then received him with open arms, and was continually with him, both on board and on ſhore. An unlucky circumſtance however happened, for being one day on board the Reſolution in the great cabin, juſt before dinner, a knife and fork attracted his notice ſo much as to induce him to conceal them. It was ſoon diſcovered that the uſual number was not there, and the Captain's ſuſpicion immediately reſting upon him, he was ſearched and the things found, for which he got a good flogging, and was turned out of the ſhip. Captain Cook wiſhed much to have ſettled Omai at this place, and put him under the protection of Otoo; but he never would hear of it, and declared that he would remain no where but at Huaheine. His reaſon for fixing upon this iſland in particular was, becauſe its ſituation he ſaid was very convenient for him, to chaſtiſe the inſolence of the Bora-bora men, for whom he has the moſt inveterate hatred.

Omai had been very laviſh of his things at Ohitapeah, and he alſo diſtributed them here in a manner that a good deal diſpleaſed Captain Cook, who often adviſed him to be more frugal, but without effect. The people at this place did not appear much to like him, and frequently turned up their noſes at him as he paſſed along: but at length Tohaw (the lord high admiral, as we uſed to call him), who was a man of a fine generous ſpirit, took a great deal of notice of him, gave him two or three ſervants, and was very deſirous of his living with him, but Omai would not liſten to reaſon.

We were now conſtantly viſited by many of the principal arees, among whom were Oammo (huſband to the late queen Oberea), Potatow, and Tohaw.

On the 27th inſtant, ſome people from Ohitapeah came on board the Diſcovery, and informed the Captain that two Spaniſh ſhips had arrived at that place on the preceding evening. He immediately waited upon Captain Cook, and related the information he had received: whilſt they were diſcourſing of the affair, one of the Indians introduced himſelf, and ſaid he had actually been on board one of the ſhips, and that the clothing which he then had on, was given him by one of the commanders. It appeared to be perfectly new, which, with the many proteſtations and aſſurances the man made reſpecting the truth of the report, induced Captain Cook to ſend a boat, with an officer, attended by this genius, who voluntarily offered to conduct them, to aſcertain the truth: in the interim both veſſels were cleared for action, in caſe the Dons ſhould think proper to attack us. On the evening of the 29th the boat returned, having looked into Ohitapeah harbour, where there was not the leaſt appearance of a ſhip, conſequently the whole was nothing more than a ſtory which theſe ingenious people had contrived to hatch up. Indeed their conductor was ſo ſenſible of this, that he took the firſt opportunity of making his eſcape by jumping overboard, and by that means, in all probability, eſcaped a good kicking.

We found our friends engaged in a war with a neighbouring iſland called Imaio, or York Iſland, which, as far as we could learn, appeared to be an old affair. When Captain Cook was at Otaheitee in the courſe of his laſt voyage, they were preparing a very formidable fleet to attack that iſland, which formerly was tributary to Otaheitee, but revolted ſome years ſince. Soon after the departure of the Reſolution they ſailed, and upon landing their forces a briſk engagement enſued, and our friends entirely routed them, and obliged them to fly to the mountains. They ſoon after ſued for peace, and very gladly accepted of it upon any terms; when it was agreed that one of Tohaw's family ſhould reſide there as governor. This they readily aſſented to, and for ſome time appeared perfectly ſatisfied; but it did not continue long, for by degrees they began to diſpute the authority of their new governor, and at laſt diſpatched him. This was the cauſe of the preſent war; and in conſequence of it, on the evening of the 1ſt of September, Tohaw offered a human ſacrifice to their god of war, whom they call Oro. Theſe kinds of religious rites we find are cuſtomary things amongſt them upon any particular occaſion. The perſon ſacrificed is always one of the loweſt and moſt uſeleſs perſon they can find: he is totally ignorant of the affair, till the perſons who are ſent to diſpatch him arrive, when they knock him on the head without any heſitation. The body is then conveyed to the place of ſacrifice with great form and ceremony. This place ſeems to be ſet apart entirely for religious affairs of this nature: on one ſide was a houſe for the reſidence of the prieſts, at ſome diſtance from which was a large piece of board elevated upon two poſts rudely carved, upon which were placed ſeveral hogs and dogs that probably were killed upon this occaſion. Near this was a kind of flat ſhed raiſed upon four poſts, and decorated all round near the top with garlands made of particular kind of trees, ſuch as the emotoo, awa, and etee, and upon its top ſeveral bunches of plantains and coco nuts were placed. On one ſide was a kind of altar formed of ſtone, and raiſed about two feet from the ſurface of the ground, upon various parts of which were fixed thoſe rude kinds of carvings that are uſually to be diſtinguiſhed near morais, and in the midſt of theſe were a number of human ſkulls, which belonged to thoſe who had formerly been ſacrificed. Near the houſe were two large drums, upon which two men were almoſt continually druming during the ceremony. The prieſt takes out one of the eyes, which he offers to the god, at the ſame time making a long prayer, imploring his protection during the war, and begging that victory may crown their arms, after which the body is interred.

As it was Tohaw's relation whom the people of Imaio had murdered, he of courſe was the moſt active man, and had made great preparations; Otoo, Potatow, and another chief whoſe name was Tapaow, were alſo to aſſiſt him. On the 19th, the two latter, with Tohaw, ſailed for Imaio, whilſt Otoo was to muſter his forces and join him the next day. Accordingly there was a review of his war canoes; after which, inſtead of going to the aſſiſtance of Tohaw, as was expected, they all departed to the ſeveral diſtricts to which they belong; the conſequence of which was, the admiral and his friends were very roughly handled, and obliged to make off in the beſt manner they could.

This behaviour of Otoo enraged old Tohaw exceedingly, who declared vengeance againſt him, and even threatened to dethrone him, which he ſaid it was no very difficult matter to compaſs, as Wyeatuah, the young king of Tiarraboo, is his nephew; and their combined forces might eaſily give him a ſhock which he would not readily get the better of.

On the 29th of September, in the afternoon, after taking leave of all our old friends at Matavai, both veſſels weighed and made ſail, accompanied by Omai in a large double canoe, which he had purchaſed there. Soon after we bore away to get clear of the reef, and at ſix, being a good diſtance from it, we brought to for the night, with the main-top-ſail to the maſt. At daylight we made ſail, ſteering a due courſe for Imaio, which then bore about W. S. W. At eight we were pretty near it, and there being a fine bay a-head, the boats were got out to ſee if there was a ſufficient depth of water for the ſhips.

At ten they returned with an account of its affording excellent accommodations; we therefore ſtood in for it, and at eleven both ſhips anchored in about ſeven fathom water, with a muddy bottom, the Reſolution being on the eaſtern ſhore, the Diſcovery on the weſtern. It was till this time a matter of doubt, whether this iſland afforded any ſhelter for veſſels, but we now found that a little farther to the eaſtward there was another harbour equally as convenient as this.

On Thurſday (October the 2d), in the morning, the king of the iſland, whoſe name is Mahine, viſited the captains; he was attended by ſeveral people, and two or three handſome women. He appeared to be about forty, was above the middle ſize, and rather fat; he had many ſcars upon his body, and has loſt one eye, all which he ſays are the conſequences of the many wars he has been engaged in. He has a ſon who he intends to ſucceed him, provided he can become independent; but the people of Otaheitee will probably always be too powerful for him, and of courſe put in a king of their own chooſing.

We here heard of the death of Oammo, by ſome people who had followed the ſhips from Otaheitee, who had been ill ſeveral days before our departure.

On Monday evening (Sept. 7th), the natives ſtole one of the Reſolution's goats, which, with our other live ſtock, had been ſent on ſhore to graze: the large cutter, with an officer, in the morning was diſpatched to Mahine's reſidence, to inform him of the theft, and beg that he would exert his authority, and aſſiſt us to recover it. In the evening he returned with the goat, and the perſon who had ſtolen it; who, in order to ſtrike him with ſome degree of terror, was, by order of Captain Cook, put into irons.

But theſe ingenious people did not reſt here, for during the abſence of the above boat, they ſtole another. This proof of their dexterity greatly diſpleaſed Captain Cook, who, the next day, ſent two ſtrong parties on ſhore, well-armed, with orders to deſtroy ſome of their canoes, &c. and ſince lenient meaſures proved ineffectual, he was determined to act with ſome degree of ſeverity. One or two of their houſes were burnt, and ſeveral hogs brought off; which mode of conduct alarmed them ſo much, that the day after the goat was returned.

Having completed our wood and water, and got every thing on board, we weighed our anchors, and ſtood out of the harbour.

Imaio is, without exception, the moſt pleaſant of all the Society Iſles. Its appearance is truly romantic, and it abounds with variety of landſcapes that are delightful beyond deſcription: it is divided nearly in the centre by a range of mountains, that riſe in a variety of forms, appearing like old ruined caſtles or churches. At the bottom of them is a large tract of moderately high land, interſperſed with groves of various trees; on one ſide of this, the land makes a ſudden break, and forms a moſt delightful valley, beyond which the ſcene is beautifully contraſted, and the view cloſed by ſeveral irregular mountains.

The next courſe we ſteered was for Huaheine, which we ſoon reached, and anchored in Owharre harbour. Here the aſtronomers tents, as well as thoſe belonging to the ſhips, were again pitched; and, having the convenience of a large houſe, Captain Cook ordered all the bread, which was in a very rotten and bad condition, to be got on ſhore and dried. As this was the iſland which Omai fixed upon for his reſidence, the carpenters were ſet to work to erect him a houſe to contain his valuables, which would by no means have been ſecure in one of his own country, and in the courſe of a few days it was completed. Our reception at this iſland was very friendly; and one of the principal men, whoſe name was Mahine, ſupplied the Diſcovery with abundance of hogs, fowls, and very fine bread-fruit; the latter ſuperior to any we had ever met with before.

One evening we were alarmed on board by the firing of a muſket from the ſhore, and obſerving moſt of the natives running about in great confuſion, we immediately ſuſpected ſome theft had been committed; boats from both ſhips were ſent to enquire into the cauſe of this uproar, and upon their return, we found our conjectures proved true, for ſomebody had ſtolen a quadrant from one of the aſtronomers tents, which being encloſed in a box, and not put in ſo ſecure a place as it ought to have been, ſome of theſe ingenious people had contrived to carry off. This was a loſs which could not be put up with; ſtrict ſearch therefore was made after the thief, and with much trouble and difficulty he at laſt was caught, carried on board the ſhip, and put in irons; the quadrant was found, concealed amongſt ſome high graſs, about a quarter of a mile from the tents. The man, after undergoing ſome hours confinement, receiving a ſevere flogging, and having his head ſhaved

(which

(which is an operation they are by no means fond of), was diſcharged; but no ſooner was he on ſhore than he declared vengeance againſt Omai, who had been very active in ſecuring him, and threatened to burn his houſe and deſtroy him. In fact, ſeveral attempts of this kind were made during the night, and poor Omai was obliged to be very circumſpect, and careful in keeping watch. Not content with this, the villain deſtroyed ſeveral grape vines, which Omai had brought from the Cape of Good Hope, and which he was particularly anxious to preſerve; theſe were planted upon the ſide of a hill, not far from his houſe, and in all probability would have ſucceeded very well in their growth.

Complaints were made to Captain Cook of theſe outrages, who, anxious for the ſafety of Omai, and fearing that if this man remained upon the iſland, ſome miſchief would enſue, determined to take an opportunity of ſecuring and conveying him on board, with an intent to leave him upon ſome of the iſlands we might fall in with, in our way to the northward. This plan was accordingly put in execution, and the gentleman confined in irons; but a day or two after, by ſome means or other, which never could be found out, he contrived to make his eſcape. Captain Cook ſtrongly ſuſpected that ſomebody on board the ſhip had ſet him at liberty, which it is more than probable was the caſe.

During our ſtay, Omai gave ſeveral entertainments on ſhore, to which moſt of the gentlemen of the ſhips were invited, and Captains Cook and Clerke always made a point of being there, as it might in the end prove ſerviceable to him: for the natives ſeeing their countryman ſo much reſpected by the Captains, might, on that account, be induced to behave better to him after their departure.

The time at length arrived for ſailing, and in the morning Omai, attended by his two New Zealand boys, viſited both ſhips, and with many tears took a moſt affectionate leave of all his friends, who could not forbear ſympathizing with him. Having got into his canoe, we again bid him farewell, got up our anchors, and ſoon after ſtood out of the harbour, making the beſt of our way for Uriatea, with many paſſengers on board, both male and female.

The next day we anchored in Ohamaneno, one of the harbours of that iſland; and in the afternoon moored both ſhips cloſe to the ſhore, the Reſolution being on one ſide, and the Diſcovery on the other. Many of our old friends came off in their canoes, and, amongſt the reſt, Oreo, the chief of the iſland, who eaſily recognized Captain Cook: a briſk trade was ſoon opened on both ſides, and we had as plentiful a ſupply of every thing as we could wiſh for.

As this was the laſt of the Society Iſles we propoſed ſtopping at, every thing was got on ſhore that wanted the leaſt repair. Our tents were pitched, the forge erected, parties were ſent to wood and water, and a proper place was fixed upon for making aſtronomical obſervations.

A day or two after our arrival, Boba, the chief of Otahaw, with his wife Teinamai, waited upon us, and made the Captains a preſent of ſeveral hogs, bread-fruit, coco nuts, &c. Mr. Forſter mentions in his publication, that he was to be married to Miverua, the daughter of Opoone, king of Bora-bora; however that might have been, he now lives with Teinamai. She by no means anſwers the deſcription given of her in the laſt voyage, having ſince had ſeveral children; and is altered in every reſpect much for the worſe, except in her temper and diſpoſition, which are equally as good and agreeable as before.

We continued repairing our rigging, mending ſails, wooding, and watering, &c with all expedition, and were nearly upon the point of ſailing, when two of the Diſcovery's people were miſſing. As this happened in the evening, it was concluded that they were carrying on an intrigue with ſome of the ladies, and no more was thought of it; but the morning came, and hearing nothing of them, we were rather alarmed, and made very ſtrict enquiry of the natives, who at firſt declared they were perfectly ignorant of the matter; but with much perſuaſion one informed us, that they had the preceding night embarked in a canoe with two or three of the inhabitants, and paddled out to ſea.

This at once diſcloſed the whole of their plan, and many circumſtances occurred, which confirmed us in our ſuſpicion, viz. that they had made their eſcape with a view of remaining with the natives, and one of them had gone ſo far, a few days before, as to deſire Captain Cook's permiſſion to ſtay.

No time was now to be loſt in the recovery of them: accordingly, boats well-manned and armed were ſent to different parts of the iſland, but all returned without gaining any intelligence: the next day was ſpent in the ſame manner, and with as little ſucceſs.

We had now only one reſource left, which was to ſecure ſome of the principal people, and keep them in cuſtody till our men were delivered up, which was done the following day.

Captain Clerke having occaſion to go on board the Reſolution, found Oreo's ſon and daughter with her huſband there, and having informed Captain Cook of his intention, who readily agreed to the plan, he invited them on board the Diſcovery, under a pretence of giving them ſome hatchets, knives, and beads. As the Captain had frequently made them preſents before, they accompanied him without

out the leaſt heſitation, but no ſooner were they arrived in the great cabin, than a centinel was placed at the door, and the window ſecured. This proceeding of courſe ſurpriſed them a good deal, and Captain Clerke having explained the reaſon of it, and the neceſſity he was under of doing it, they burſt into tears, and begged he would not kill them. He aſſured them he would not, and that the moment his people were brought back, they ſhould be releaſed: this however did not quiet their apprehenſions, and they continued in a ſtate of great deſpondency all night. No ſooner was it known amongſt the natives, that Moedua (which was the name of Oreo's daughter), with her brother and huſband, were confined as priſoners, than a large party of women aſſembled on ſhore, and even in the water near the ſhips, and ſet up a moſt diſmal howling, ſtriking their boſoms, and cutting their heads with ſharks teeth, which cauſed a plentiful effuſion of blood, and gave them the appearance of furies rather than women; ſome worked themſelves up to ſuch a pitch as to become nearly frantic, whilſt the royal priſoners bewailed their ſituation in ſilent ſorrow. This continued near half an hour, when having entirely exhauſted themſelves with paſſion, they retired.

In the evening, ſeveral of the chiefs had formed a deſign of ſeizing Captains Cook and Clerke, as they took their evening walk, and would certainly have put it in execution, had he not received timely intelligence from a girl who came with us from Huaheine. She had been on ſhore almoſt the whole day, and towards evening came on board in a great fright, telling us that Tootee and Taatee (the names the captains went by) would be killed. Captain Clerke was then on ſhore. A ſtrong armed party were directly ſent, who in their way overtook ſeveral of the natives armed with clubs and ſticks.

As ſoon as they ſaw our men they appeared much confuſed, and made off, a few muſkets were diſcharged after them, but without doing any miſchief. The captain in his walk had met with one or two of the chiefs, and obſerved ſeveral others lurking about, which, with their behaviour, made him rather ſuſpicious, ſo he very wiſely turned back, and went on board the Reſolution, which rendered their ſcheme abortive. In the morning, Oreo came on board the Diſcovery, and with tears in his eyes begged permiſſion to ſpeak to his ſons and daughter, which he was ſuffered to do. Being informed, that unleſs he brought back our two men, Captain Clerke would carry the priſoners to England, he ſaid he would do all in his power to find them, and after a ſhort ſtay departed.

At length the runaways were brought on board, and put in irons, and Moedua with her huſband and brother, ſet at liberty: after receiving ſeveral preſents from the captain, as a ſmall recompence for their confinement, they went on ſhore, and were received with great joy by their countrymen and women, who had aſſembled for that purpoſe.

Our deſerters we found had paddled all night, and the next morning arrived at Bora-bora; and having reſted themſelves proceeded to a ſmall iſland called Tubai, where they were taken.

Having nothing now to detain us, we got up our anchors, but the wind not proving favourable, we were obliged once more to let them go. However, on the 9th of December (Sunday) we again weighed and made ſail, accompanied by numbers of our old friends in their canoes, who attended the ſhips a conſiderable way beyond the harbour, and then very cordially bid us adieu.

Captain Cook at firſt had ſome idea of ſtopping a day or two at Bora-bora; but the harbour not proving a good one, he purſued his courſe to the northward.

The ſociety of the areeois is eſteemed the moſt polite eſtabliſhment in theſe iſlands; the members of which are always people of rank and fortune, and are diſtinguiſhed by being tattowed in a peculiar manner, particularly thoſe who are natives of Bora-bora.

It will here be neceſſary to obſerve, what it is that firſt conſtitutes a member, and ſome of the rights and privileges annexed to this ſociety. It is in conſequence of a moſt cruel and inhuman action: a man muſt connect himſelf with a girl; and the firſt child he has by her, muſt be ſtrangled the inſtant it is born. At the next meeting they muſt bring witneſſes to prove this horrid deed, after which they are admitted as members.

They generally go in companies of ten or twelve ſail of canoes, and let them direct their courſe to whatever iſland they pleaſe, they are always certain of being well received; nay, if they have even been at war but a few days before the viſit, all animoſity is laid aſide, and they are as perfect friends as if nothing had happened.

One of their privileges is to keep two, three, or more women at once, who, however muſt be members. They always wear the beſt cloth the iſlands produce, and eat many peculiar things, which others, even if arees, are not permitted to do. They are generally diſtinguiſhed for their prowеſs, valour, and activity in battle; and if any of them ſhew the leaſt ſigns of cowardice, he is excluded the ſociety; which is eſteemed ſuch a diſgrace, that from that time he loſes all his conſequence, and nobody will aſſociate with or ſpeak to him. Their amuſements during theſe meetings conſiſt of boxing, wreſtling, dancing, and making feaſts and entertainments, at which crowds of female ſpectators attend, the faireſt of whom are always made choice of by the conquerors. In general, they continue in this ſociety to the age of thirty or thirty-five, ſive, when by ſuffering one of their children to ſurvive, they debar themſelves of the privileges of an arreoi. Many remain members all their lives, and die in a moſt emaciated ſtate, occaſioned by their very debauched way of living.

CHAP. XII.

Depart from the Society Iſles—diſcover a low ſandy iſland—catch many fiſh and turtle — nearly loſe two of the Diſcovery's men—leave the iſland—deſcription of it—amazing flocks of birds—proceed to the northward—ſee more land—anchor off A'toui, one of the Sandwich Iſles—proceedings there—the Reſolution drags her anchor, and ſtands out to ſea—the king and queen viſit Captain Clerke—the Diſcovery ſails—both ſhips anchor off Onebow, another of the Sandwich Iſles — tranſactions there — ſome account of thoſe iſlands.

OUR weather, after leaving the Society Iſles, was pleaſant, with a freſh trade-wind. On the 22d, we obſerved a greater number of birds than uſual, which increaſed as we continued our courſe; and moſt of them being ſuch as never fly very far from land, we concluded ourſelves to be in the neighbourhood of ſome.

Orders were given to keep a good look out ; and we ſtood on, the birds (which were boobies, men of war birds, egg birds, and tropic birds) becoming more numerous till the 24th, when being in latitude 2 deg. 3 min. N. and longitude 202 deg. 22 min. E. we diſcovered a low ſandy iſle, with a few trees upon it, which had the appearance of being burnt or ſcorched up by the heat of the ſun.

In the afternoon, we were well in with the land, and captain Cook, having taken a view of it, ſignified his intention of ſtopping there for a day or two, as he apprehended it might prove a convenient place for catching turtle. About an hour after, we anchored off the S. W. part of it, and the Reſolution ſent a boat to look for a convenient landing-place ; but not meeting with one, we weighed and ſtood on towards the N. W. part of it, when we anchored again about two miles from the ſhore, oppoſite to a ſmall patch of coco nut trees, which from that circumſtance we called Coco Nut Point, and near which there was a break in the reef, large enough to admit boats. Parties from both ſhips were ſent on ſhore, and the firſt night they turned upwards of thirty turtle; we alſo ſent our boats to catch fiſh, and had very good ſucceſs, ſo that with fiſh and turtle we lived exceedingly well. This proved a welcome ſupply, for our ſtock of freſh proviſions had been conſumed a few days before our diſcovery of this iſland.

We employed ourſelves in this manner till the 1ſt of January, during which time we had collected a conſiderable number of turtle for both ſhips, but had nearly loſt two of the Diſcovery's men, who unthinkingly ſtrayed from their party, and proceeding in a directly oppoſite direction to what they ought, had well nigh periſhed with heat and thirſt. In the evening, captain Cook made the ſignal for the boats to return, and the next morning (January 2d) we weighed our anchors, and proceeded to the northward.

This place, which we called Chriſtmas Iſland (having ſpent that anniverſary there), is one of thoſe low lagoon iſlands ſo frequently to be met with between the tropics. It is ſurrounded by a reef of coral rock, upon which a heavy ſurf continually vents its fury. Its appearance is deſolate and barren, being little more than a large ſand bank of a ſemicircular form, covered in ſome places with a low bruſh wood. The ſoil is compoſed of ſand, ſtones, and the decayed ſhells of crabs, and other ſhell-fiſh. Its inhabitants are innumerable flocks of boobies, man of war birds, egg birds, petrels, tropic birds, and two or three ſpecies of plover, moſt of which were ſo tame as to be taken off the buſhes. In one or two places we found ſmall patches of coco nut trees, the fruit of which was ſmall, and the milk poor and inſipid, and the trees conſiderably ſtinted in their growth. The reef abounds with various kinds of fiſh, particularly a ſpecies of ſhark about four feet in length, which conſtantly attended our boats to and from the ſhips: there are alſo very large cavallias, ſnappers, and a fiſh which they called a rock-cod. On ſhore, we found numbers of a ſpecies of crab, which from their bright red colour we called ſoldiers, and abundance of land crabs. We likewiſe ſaw ſeveral rats, which were ſmaller than our's, and their colour more red. We tried in many places for freſh water, but could procure none but what was very brackiſh, and totally unfit for uſe.

Our courſe from hence was nearly north: we had a fine ſteady breeze, and the weather was fine and pleaſant. On the 17th, our latitude was 20 deg. 25 min. N. and longitude 200 deg. 45 min. E. The next day (Jan. 18), being in latitude 21 deg. 13 min. N. and longitude

200 deg. 49 min. E. we ſaw land to the eaſtward, and ſoon after deſcried more to the N. W. for which we ſhaped our courſe; but night coming on, we tacked and ſtood off till morning (Jan. 19th), when we proceeded to trace the coaſt in a S. W. and W. direction. The land at firſt preſented rather a barren appearance, but upon a cloſer view it improved upon us, particularly on the weſtern ſide, which conſiſted of a large tract of fine level plains, and beyond them a double range of hills, which were covered with trees. Upon the ſhore we ſaw a few cluſters of coco nut trees, but by no means ſo abundant as at the Society Iſles. As we drew nearer in-ſhore, ſome of the inhabitants put off in their canoes, and very readily came along ſide. Their colour was more of the copper caſt than that of the natives of Taheitee, and they wore their hair long, and of different hues, like the people of the Friendly Iſles. Their dreſs was nothing more than a narrow ſlip of cloth round

their middle, and they were marked or tattowed in different parts of their body. Their cloth was ſtamped or printed in various patterns, not much unlike our printed linens; their language nearly reſembled that of Taheitee. They were eaſily perſuaded to come on board, and, like all other Indians ſoon began to thieve, but nothing of any conſequence was loſt. We ſaw no weapons among them, nor did they behave abruptly or diſagreeably, but in their diſpoſition ſeemed friendly and good natured. We purchaſed a few pigs and ſweet potatoes of them, for which we gave them a hatchet or two, and a few ſmall nails, with which they appeared very well ſatisfied. In the evening we ſtood off, intending to examine the place more cloſely the next day.

In the morning (Jan. 20th) at ſix, captain Cook made a ſignal for the Diſcovery's ſix-oared cutter, which, accompanied with the Reſolution's pinnace and large cutter, was ſent to look for a ſafe place for the ſhips to anchor, and to try what ſoundings were to be found nearer in ſhore. During their abſence, we ſtood off and on, being fearful of venturing too near. The natives came off as yeſterday, and we bought a few hogs, tarrow, ſweet potatoes, and ſugar-cane, of all which they appeared to have plenty, and excellent of their kind. At three in the afternoon the boats returned, having found a tolerable birth, and at four both veſſels came to. Soon after captain Cook went on ſhore in the pinnace, attended by the Diſcovery's cutter, both well-armed. He was received on ſhore very cordially by the natives, who treated him during his ſtay with great reſpect and attention, and brought many ſmall hogs, potatoes, tarrow, or eddoes, and ſugar-cane, all which were purchaſed at a very eaſy rate. The women were rather ordinary, and in general maſculine, and will ſcarce bear a compariſon with the fair dames of Taheitee. Their dreſs is the ſame as that of the men, only the cloth is wider, and reaches down to the knees. Their hair is cut ſhort behind, and long before, but turned back like our toupees, which mode of wearing it does not ſet them off to the greateſt advantage. Many, who were along-ſide in their canoes, pleaded hard to come on board, but captain Cook had given ſtrict orders, previous to his anchoring, not to ſuffer a ſingle woman to be admitted into the ſhips, as there were ſeveral people in both, who ſtill had the venereal diſeaſe. But, notwithſtanding every precaution, many of our men contrived to have connexions with them, in conſequence of which we found this terrible diſorder raging among them when we arrived there the ſecond time.

The next day (Jan. 21ſt), the launches were ſent to fill water, which could be procured without much difficulty, from a fine river at no great diſtance from the ſhips, and parties were diſpatched to the ſhore to trade with the natives, while others were to ſuperintend the market on board the ſhips. They ſupplied us with abundance of every thing the iſland produced, and in the evening our trading parties returned with abundance of fine hogs, potatoes, ſugar-cane, &c.

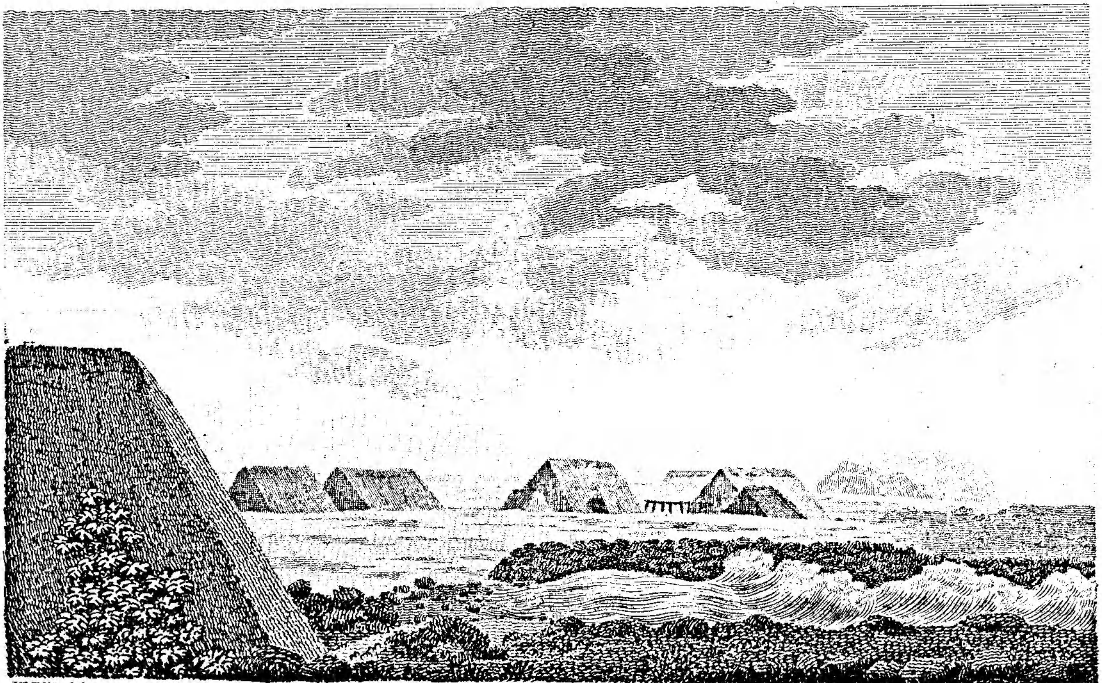
The 22d was very windy, with much rain, which prevented our boats from landing, as a heavy ſurf broke upon the ſhore. Our friends however came off in the midſt of it, and a briſk trade was carried on, on board. We alſo purchaſed many of their ornaments, ſuch as fans, necklaces, bracelets, cloaks, and caps, compoſed of red and yellow feathers, which were very curious, the latter being made in form of helmets. They alſo brought off ſome ſpears, which were about ten feet long, admirably poliſhed, and the end intended for execution was about eight or ten inches in length, had many barbs, and was pointed.

During a heavy ſquall, the Reſolution dragged her anchor, and ſwung near a ſhoal. Her ſituation being rather dangerous, captain Cook ordered the anchor to be weighed, and ſtood off ſhore; but the winds ſoon after becoming light, and a ſtrong current ſetting to the weſtward, ſhe fell conſiderably to leeward, and at laſt was obliged to ſtand out to ſea. The Diſcovery, being ſecure, ſtaid behind.

The 23d was very rainy during the whole day, but as there was but little wind, captain Clerke ſent the Diſcovery's boats on ſhore to trade as uſual, and many of the inhabitants came on board as before.

Early the next morning (Jan. 24th,) the Diſcovery weighed and made ſail; but the wind proved ſo light, that ſhe fell to leeward, and was obliged ſoon after to come to. The Reſolution at this time was out of ſight. About nine, the king of the iſland came alongſide in a double canoe: captain Clerke, underſtanding who he was, requeſted him much to come on board, which he appeared willing to do, but his attendants were ſo fearful of his receiving ſome hurt or other, that they intreated him not to do it. He ventured however as far as the gangway, where he ſat down, and preſented the captain with a curious carved bowl; in return for which he received ſome large nails, a cut-glaſs bowl, and ſome other trifles, which pleaſed him exceedingly. After a ſhort ſtay, his attendants bore him in their arms to his canoe, and he went on ſhore. His name was Tomahana; he appeared to be about thirty years old, and was above the middle ſize; he was clothed in the ſame manner as the meaneſt of his ſubjects, and could only be diſtinguiſhed by the great reſpect they paid him. Soon after his departure, the queen arrived in another canoe, and in the ſame manner was permitted to go no farther than the gangway. She likewiſe made captain Clerke a preſent of ſome elegant ruffs made of various coloured feathers, for which he gave her ſome beads, looking glaſſes, and a piece of ſcarlet cloth; after which ſhe was carried into her canoe, and proceeded to the ſhore. She was young, and had a pleaſing countenance, but her dreſs was not remarkable.

At ſeven the next morning (Jan. 25), the Diſcovery got up her anchor, and made ſail, with a fine breeze. Soon after ſhe ſaw the Reſolution, and bore down to her. The three following days were ſpent by both ſhips in turning to windward, to regain their old ſituations if poſſible, but they could not reach even the weſternmoſt point of the iſland. The next day (29th), therefore, they bore away for a ſmall iſle about ſeven leagues to leeward of this, and at ten in the morning were running along ſhore, when captain Cook ſent the pinnace to ſtrike ſoundings, and ſee if we could anchor with ſafety. Soon after ſhe made the ſignal of anchorage, and the Reſolution came to; but the Diſcovery, having thirty and forty fathoms with a rocky bottom, continued to ſtand on; about half an hour after ſhe let go



W. Ellis del. W. Ellis direx.t

A View in the Island of Owhyhee

her anchor in twenty-three fathoms of water, the bottom a fine white ſand, and about two miles off ſhore.

This iſland was conſiderably ſmaller than the other, and had rather a wretched appearance; the ſouth point of it is terminated by a high bluff rock, the interior parts are low, with here and there a ſmall elevation, and not a tree is to be ſeen.

In the morning (30th), our new acquired friends came off with ſweet potatoes, yams, and ſalt; in the two latter articles they ſeemed to abound. The yams were large, and the ſalt was equal to any we ever ſaw, both for colour and quality. The boats were ſent on ſhore to trade as uſual, but they found the landing far more difficult than at the laſt place, on account of a very heavy ſurf, which, when the wind varies in the leaſt to the weſtward, rolls in at ſo terrible a rate, as totally to cut off all communication with the ſhore. In the evening, they brought off what few articles they conveniently could, but left two or three of the gentlemen behind, who ſuperintended the market, till the weather ſhould be more moderate.

The next day (31ſt) we again tried to land with our boats, but were obliged to deſiſt; and in the evening had freſh gales with rain. The Reſolution being too near in-ſhore, weighed and anchored farther out.

This morning (Feb. 1ſt), the weather being more moderate, the boats were ſent on ſhore, and in the afternoon brought off the gentlemen, with ſome yams and ſalt, but were obliged to leave the principal part of their purchaſes behind. About five in the afternoon, the wind being very high, and a heavy ſwell running, the Reſolution drove, and ſoon after got under way, intending to anchor again, but by the time it was dark the current had ſet her nearly out of ſight.

A number of the natives came off to the Diſcovery the next day (Feb. 2d), with their canoes laden with ſalt, yams, ſweet potatoes, and fiſh dried and ſalted. Of the roots, a ſufficient quantity were purchaſed to ſupply the ſhip's company two months at leaſt. At ten ſhe got up her anchor, and made ſail after the Reſolution, who could juſt be diſtinguiſhed from the maſt-head. At two in the afternoon ſhe joined her, and both directed their courſe to the northward.

As we viſited theſe iſlands a ſecond time, and had an opportunity of making a greater number of remarks, relative to the manners and cuſtoms, &c. of the inhabitants, than our ſhort ſtay this time would permit, a fuller and more particular account will be given afterwards: it will therefore ſuffice for the preſent to exhibit a conciſe view of what appeared to us the moſt ſtriking and remarkable.

A'towi, which is the name of the largeſt iſland, is compoſed, on the N. W. ſide, of a large tract of level land, the interior parts, as has been obſerved before, conſiſting of a double range of hills. The houſes of the natives are in general ſituated near the ſhore, and placed in cluſters, ſo as to form ſmall towns or villages. Their external appearance greatly reſembles the top of a barn placed upon the ground, with a ſmall entrance in the middle. Some of them were elevated upon poſts about three feet high, particularly thoſe neareſt the ſea; from which we may conclude, that they are during ſome parts of the year ſubject to inundations. They are well thatched on the outſide with dry graſs, ſo as totally to prevent the entrance of rain. The floor is alſo well ſtrewed with dry graſs, upon which mats of various ſizes and dimenſions are placed. Theſe mats are of a very cloſe, compact texture, and made of different patterns, ſome of which are really elegant. They vary greatly in their degree of fineneſs. Their canoes or boats are the neateſt we ever ſaw, and compoſed of two different coloured woods, the bottom being dark, the upper part light, and furniſhed with an out-rigger. Beſides theſe, they have another mode of conveying themſelves in the water, upon very light flat pieces of board, which we called ſhark-boards, from the ſimilitude the anterior part bore to the head of that fiſh. Upon theſe they will venture into the heavieſt ſurfs, and paddling with their hands and feet, get on at a great rate. Indeed, we never ſaw people ſo active in the water, which almoſt ſeems their natural element.

O'neehow, which is the weſtermoſt iſland, is very ſmall, and rather low. It produces ſugar-cane, plantains, ſweet potatoes, yams, and ſalt; in the two latter articles it exceeds A'towi. The inhabitants are not numerous; their houſes, &c. are exactly like thoſe of the above mentioned iſle.

CHAP. XIII.

We depart for the northward—fall in with the N. W. coaſt of America—trace the coaſt as well as the wind and weather permit—are put to an allowance of water—diſcover King George's Sound—where we anchor—the natives viſit us—account of them, and of our tranſactions there—departare from King George's Sound.

IN the afternoon of the 2d of February, the Diſcovery joined her conſort, and proceeded in a N. N. E. and N. E. direction for the coaſt of America. On the 13th, our lat. was 31 deg. 21 min. N. and long. 205 deg. 12 min. E. we had ſmooth water, and open cloudy weather, with a ſwell from the N. E. On the 16th, we began to find it cold, the thermometor ſtanding at 56 deg. This is not ſo much to be wondered at, conſidering we had ſpent near a twelvemonth between the tropics. From this time to the 23d, our weather was in general clear and pleaſant, with fine breezes from the S. W. we had ſome albatroſſes and petrels about us, and the ſea was in general pretty ſmooth. On the 24th, it became very hazy and foggy, which continued more or leſs till the 1ſt of March. Our courſe during this time was nearly N. E. On the 25th, at ſeven in the morning, we paſſed a log of wood with barnacles on it; and on the 27th, being in latitude 43 deg. 47 min. N. and longitude 224 deg. 38 min. 30 ſeconds E. we paſſed another. In the night we obſerved the *aurora borealis* very ſtrong, between the N. N. W. and N. E. and the next day ſaw ſeveral whales about. The weather now became warmer; the thermometer, which had been as low as 48 deg. roſe to 53 and 54 deg. and we had calms till the 3d of March, when a breeze ſprung up, though not a very favourable one, our courſe being litte better than E. S. E. We ſaw to-day ſome divers, which induced us to think we were not far from land.

The 5th, was cloudy and hazy, with light winds inclinable to calms, with a ſwell from the northward; and on the 6th, we paſſed ſeveral pieces of drift wood and ſome rock-weed. The water being diſcoloured, captain Cook ordered the lead to be hove, but got no ground. In the afternoon we ſaw two ſeals, ſeveral whales, and ſome porpuſſes. The next day (the 7th), at day-light, being nearly in latitude 44 deg. 33 min. N. and longitude 235 deg. 36 min. E. we ſaw land (being part of America) bearing N. E. At eight, the extremes bore N. N. E. and S. E. by E; they appeared the higheſt part of the land, and made in ſeveral bluff capes and ſmall bays or inlets, the whole forming a deep bay, the extremes of the land in ſight being the two points of it. At nine, the water having the appearance of ſoundings, we got a caſt of the lead, and found bottom at ninety-five fathom. We ſaw a great number of birds of the gull kind.

The next day we had a ſtrong breeze from the weſtward. The air was much colder than yeſterday, with open cloudy weather, but very unſettled and ſqually, with ſhowers of hail. The wind not proving favourable for exploring the coaſt, we ſtood to the ſouthward, to avoid getting too near the land. The 9th, was equally as unſettled as the day before; ſometimes being calm, at others ſqually. In the morning there was no land in ſight, but at two in the afternoon we ſaw it extending from N. E. ½ N. to N. E. by E. but at a good diſtance.

The weather on the 10th was heavy, dark, and cloudy, with ſhowers of hail, the air cold and piercing. In the courſe of the night we had a favourable ſhift of wind, which we took the advantage of, and ſtood in for the land; and in the morning at ſix, were well in with it, the northern extreme making in a bluff point with white cliffs, and which proved to be Cape Blanco, bearing N. ½ E. and the ſouthern one making in a long low point S. E. by E. our diſtance from the ſhore about ſeven miles. The land near the ſhore was of a moderate height: the hills were covered with ſtrait tall trees of the fir kind, and where they were but thinly ſcattered, the ground was covered with ſnow. There were a number of white ſandy beaches, which at a diſtance appeared like chalk cliffs: this part of the coaſt runs nearly N. and S. and in a ſtrait direction, without the leaſt appearance of a bay or inlet. During the night, we had frequent ſqualls with ſhowers of hail and ſnow which continued more or leſs the beſt part of the next day. The ſqualls were generally ſo heavy, as to oblige us to get down our top-gallant-yards, and cloſe-reef our top-ſails. As the wind continued ſo long to the weſtward, and ſo freſh withal, al, we could do nothing more than ſtand off and on, which plan we continued till the 15th, but we fell to leeward conſiderably. Our weather was now dark and cloudy, with a naſty moiſt atmoſphere: in the afternoon, the wind being more moderate, we wore ſhip, and ſtood in for the land again. In the night, we had light airs and calms. On the 16th, we had moderate breezes with cloudy weather, and in the afternoon ſaw ſeveral whales. The 17th, and part of the 18th, were rainy and diſagreeable; but the 19th was fine, clear, and pleaſant, with a fine little breeze from the S. S. E. which in the afternoon, almoſt died away, and in the courſe of the night ſhifted to the northward. We continued however to ſtand in for the land, and the next day a hawk was ſeen flying round the ſhips.

In the night the veſſels loſt ſight of each other; but the Diſcovery firing a gun, the Reſolution anſwered it with a light. The next day we had the wind from the ſouthward, which in the afternoon freſhened up, but towards evening it became ſqually and rainy, when it ſhifted to its old corner, W. by N. our latitude to day at noon was 45 deg. 50 min. N.

On the 22d, we had a fine breeze and open cloudy weather; and at half paſt ſeven ſaw the land bearing N. by E. At eight, we were about twelve leagues from it: our latitude at noon was 47 deg. 20 min. N. At four in the afternoon, the ſouthern extreme bearing E. S. E. ½ E. terminated in a low point, and continued level as far to the northward as W. by N. it then became high, and mountainous, inland, while the ſea-coaſt was of a moderate height, forming ſeveral deep bays, and vallies, with broken land.

The northren extreme bore N. by W. ½ W. and was alſo level, but not ſo low as the ſouthern, and had two remarkable round hills inland; our diſtance from the neareſt ſhore was about five leagues.

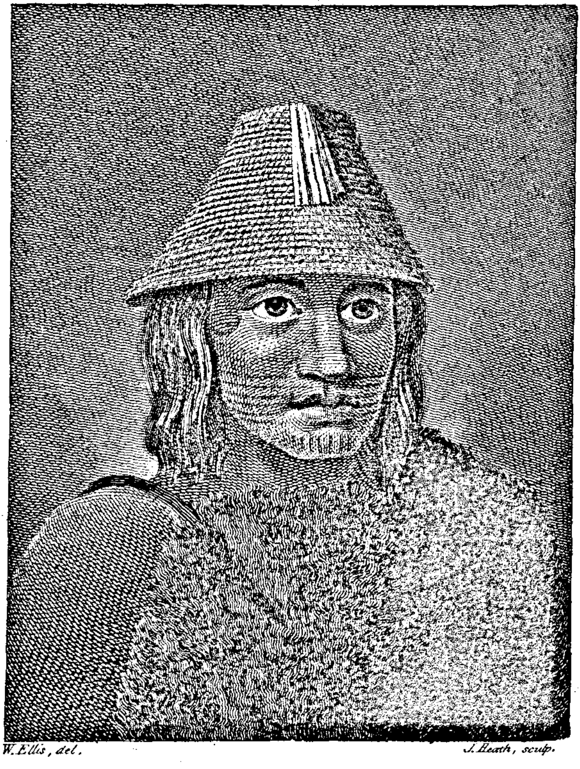
At ſix, the extremes bore N. by W. and E. S. E. the northern extreme about ten leagues diſtant; a high round hill, N. N. E. and a rock detached from the main land, N. ½ W. Within this rock the land was broken, and had much the appearance of a harbour. All this part of the coaſt was well ſtocked with wood, and afforded the moſt promiſing appearance of any we had yet ſeen. At half paſt ſix we had a heavy ſwell, ſetting in upon the land. As our water began to grow rather ſhort, we were this day put to an allowance of two quarts a day per man.

The next day was thick, heavy, rainy, and diſagreeable, with ſqualls, on which account, though the winds blew from the S. S. W. we ſtood off from the land. The 24th, was in general pleaſant, but the 25th was thick and rainy, with lulls and ſqualls alternately. At noon, our latitude was 48 deg. 28 min. N. and the next day we had a very heavy ſwell from the W. S. W. On the 28th, we had open cloudy weather, but about ten it became foggy, and the ſhips loſt ſight of each other: ſignals being made and anſwered, they ſoon aſcertained their ſituation with reſpect to diſtance, and the fog clearing away, they reſumed their courſe together.

Early the next morning, having moderate breezes and fine weather, we thought we deſcried land, ſo tacked and ſtood in for it. We had a great number of porpuſſes about, which were variegated with black and white. At half paſt nine, we plainly ſaw the land upon our weather-bow making very high, with ſnow upon the tops of the hills, and at twelve had land all round us, our latitude being 49 deg. 28 min. N. We had a fine breeze, and as there was ſome proſpect of finding a harbour, Captain Cook continued to ſtand on. At three in the afternoon, we were about three leagues diſtant from it; it appeared very woody, and in one part we deſcried an opening, which bid very fair to ſuit our purpoſe. Captain Cook therefore gave orders for bearing away, and at four we were cloſe in ſhore, running up what appeared to be a deep ſound, having twenty and thirty fathoms of water. Soon after, two or three canoes, with ſeveral of the natives on board, put off and came to the ſhips, but at firſt kept at ſome diſtance, and addreſſed us in a very harſh and uncouth language, after which they by degrees came along-ſide. They were painted red, and ſome wore a kind of garment edged with fur, and faſtened acroſs the ſhoulders like the New Zealand hahoos. One of them had ſeveral ſkins ſewed together, and thrown over his ſhoulders.

The captains gave them ſeveral things, ſuch as hatchets and nails, but they did not ſeem to underſtand their uſes, and afterwards they returned to the ſhore. This ſound appeared to be very extenſive, and contained many ſmall iſlands. At ſeven, the Reſolution let go her anchor in eighty-four fathom, muddy bottom, and at half paſt, the Diſcovery anchored in ſeventy fathom.

Early in the morning (Monday 30th) many of the Americans came off to the ſhips, of whom we purchaſed a conſiderable number of bear, wolf, lynx, and ſea-beaver ſkins, for which we gave them knives, looking-glaſſes, red cloth, and ſmall hatchets. They were to all appearance a miſerable ſet of beings: they were under the middle ſize, and ill-made, their legs being ſmall and ancles large, which is probably occaſioned by their continually ſitting with their legs under them. Their colour was lighter than any we had yet met with, but rendered black by filth and dirt. Moſt of them were daubed over their arms, face, and indeed almoſt their whole bodies, with red earth. Some of them had the lower part of their face, that is from the bottom of the noſe to the chin, of a darker colour. The hair was long and ſhaggy, and powdered as it were, with the down of birds, and daubed with the ſame colour as their bodies. Their face was broad, with high-cheek bones,



W. Ellis, del. J. Heath, sculp.

A Native

of King Georges Sound.

Publish'd Dec.r 14. 1781 by G. Robinson.

mouth wide, noſe rather flat, and their teeth bad and uneven. Upon their heads they wore a kind of bonnet, ſhaped like a tin-cover, the top of it flat. Moſt of them had a kind of cloak apparently made of the bark of a tree, the bottom was ornamented with a long fringe compoſed of the ſame materials as the cloak; that part which ſurrounded the neck being trimmed with the fur of the ſea-beaver.

Some were cloathed with the ſkins of bears and wolves ſewed together. Their canoes were different from any we had ſeen before; they were wide, without an out-rigger, and rather pointed at both ends; when they paddle, they ſit in the bottom. Their paddles were about five feet long, rather broad in the middle, and terminating in a long narrow point. In one or two of their canoes were ſeveral women, whom we at firſt could ſcarcely diſtinguiſh from the men, their dreſs being the ſame; but upon a cloſer examination, we found that their faces were not ornamented like thoſe of the men, and that with reſpect to ſtature, they were in general ſhorter.

There was one article of trade which ſome of theſe people expoſed to ſale to-day, that we never ſaw before in any country: this was ſeveral human ſkulls and dried hands. Some of our ſeamen made ſigns of eating the fleſh, which ſigns they readily made too, probably becauſe they ſaw us do it; and from this circumſtance they were pronounced to be cannibals, though it is not unlikely but that we were too haſty in forming our conjectures.

The maſters of both ſhips were ſent this morning in ſearch of a more ſecure birth for them, this being too open and expoſed; and the launches were diſpatched to fill ſome of our caſks at the firſt convenient watering-place, of which there appeared to be plenty. One or two of the officers went on ſhore in queſt of game, but met with nothing but a raccoon, which they ſaw ſporting on the ſide of a moſſy rock, and which they brought on board. They found the ſhore ſo encumbered vith rocks, and the fallen decaying trunks of trees, which (as well as the living ones) were ſo cloſe to each other, as almoſt to prevent a perſon from penetrating to any diſtance. In the evening the maſters returned with an account of a convenient place, with a handy ſpot for watering, but then the entrance was too narrow to riſque the ſhips: they likewiſe found another, at no great diſtance from this, but there was no watering-place; ſo both were rejected, and it was agreed that the veſſels ſhould next day be removed to a cove, not far from the ſpot where they then lay; and as the ſhore was ſteep-to, and no danger could happen in conſequence of rocks or ſhoal-water, they were to be ſecured to the trees on ſhore by hawſers.

Tueſday (31ſt), the greateſt part of this day was ſpent in moving the ſhips into the before mentioned cove, and ſecuring them. In the morning the natives came, as yeſterday, to traffic with us, but they were not ſo well ſupplied. The news of our arrival in this place ſeemed to have ſpread a good deal, for ſeveral canoes from more diſtant parts viſited us to-day, and brought a large ſtock of furs, moſt of which we bought at an eaſy rate. They were very fond of braſs buttons, pieces of copper and braſs, particularly if bright, and pewter and tin, which they converted into bracelets, being very fond of ſhew. Their hair was generally parted on the top of their heads, and when ſprinkled or powdered with the down of birds is deemed full dreſſed. Theſe people make uſe of bone pata-patows, nearly of the ſame form as thoſe of New Zealand, but rather longer and narrower; theſe they ornament with carved work. Their language proved very difficult for us to learn, being rough and harſh, and abounded with conſonants, particularly *t*, *s*, and *k*.

Wedneſday, April 1ſt. This morning a wooding-party were ſent on ſhore, and the aſtronomers obſervatories and inſtruments were erected upon a rock. not far from the ſhips, which was called the Aſtronomers Rock. In the afternoon boats were diſpatched for the purpoſe of finding ſpruce, to brew for the ſhip's company ; they returned in the evening with ſeveral kinds, though none of them the right American ſpruce. This afternoon there was a little diſturbance amongſt the Indians: one of them had been guilty of ſome offence, upon which the chief of the party ordered all the canoes on ſhore; the criminal was taken out, and ſix of the people ſtripped themſelves, and gave him a good beating, his goods were handed to him, and he was deſired to come there no more.

We purchaſed a few fiſh and muſcles to-day, which proved very good. This being an article that we wiſhed to encourage them to bring, we gave a good price for, and afterwards ſcarce ever wanted fiſh. We found ourſelves not a little diſappointed at the very ſcanty ſupply of game this place afforded. Before our arrival, every one was employed in getting his fowling piece in order, and forming bullets, as we fully expected to meet with plenty of hares and deer; but, ſo far from that, we ſcarce ſaw a ſingle duck.

Thurſday 2d. A new party of Indians, in four canoes, arrived this morning, who before they began to trade, entertained us with one of their ſongs and dances. One of them got up and danced, at the ſame time ſinging, while ſeveral others beat time with their paddles againſt the ſide of their canoes, and at a particular inſtant they all joined with him in a kind of chorus.

This continued for the ſpace of fifteen or twenty minutes, after which they came alongſide, and we bought variety of ſkins, particularly ſome of the ſpotted lynx, which were very beautiful.

Friday 3d. The brewers, wooders, and waterers, were very buſily employed on ſhore, in their ſeveral departments. The water was exceeding good. Several ſhooting parties were out to-day, but returned without any kind of ſucceſs, having ſeen only a ſhag or two, a few gulls, and here and there a ſmall flock of plovers upon the rocks, all which were ſo ſhy as not to come within reach of their guns.

Saturday 4th. About ten this morning we were alarmed by an unaccountable uproar amongſt the Indians, who were paddling about in ſtrange confuſion, and talking with more than ordinary vehemence. After ſome altercation they proceeded to the place where the Reſolution's people were wooding and watering, and ſome began to collect ſtones with great eagerneſs, whilſt others ran into the woods and pulled down the branches of trees, which they formed into ſpears. This appearance alarmed all our parties on ſhore, who ſoon after hailed the ſhips for arms, which were immediately ſent, and they drew themſelves up in the beſt order they could. The obſervatories were guarded by a party armed with muſquets and cutlaſſes, and thoſe on board were equally diligent in ſecuring arms and pointing the great guns to the ſpot where they were aſſembled; for we expected that they intended to attack the ſhips, as well as our parties on ſhore.

They obſerved us arming, and gave us to underſtand that they did not mean to moleſt us, but that a ſtrong party of their enemies were coming to attack them. After a ſhort conſultation, they threw away their ſtones, hauled their canoes upon the ſhore, and prepared themſelves for battle, getting their ſpears in order, and wetting the handles that they might graſp them the firmer. Soon after the enemy appeared, conſiſting of fourteen large canoes filled with people: at ſight of the ſhips they ſtopped, and appeared at a loſs in what manner to proceed.

They debated ſome time, and at laſt diſpatched a canoe to our party, and a warm diſpute was carried on for ſome time on both ſides. It appeared evident, that nothing prevented their falling upon our friends but the ſhips, which they apprehended would interfere in the diſpute. Things continued in this ſtate near two hours, when both parties, after a deal of menacing, agreed to make up matters for the preſent, and thus the affair ended.

Sunday 5th. About ſeven this morning we expected the two parties would engage: challenges were given on both ſides, they threw ſtones, brandiſhed their ſpears, and advanced with their canoes towards each other, as if coming to immediate action, when the chief of our party evidently in a paſſion got up and made a ſpeech. The enemy repeated the challenge (which they gave in a rude ſinging manner, accompanied by all the people, who likewiſe beat time as it were againſt the ſides of their canoes with their paddles),

dles), ſhook their ſpears, and went off in triumph.

We had a little buſtle to-day alongſide the ſhips; one of the natives ſtole a bear's-ſkin out of a canoe, whilſt the owner's back was turned, who ſoon after miſſed it, and charged the perſon who was in the next canoe with the theft, and who in fact really did take it. He denied the charge, however, and the other ſtill perſiſted in his accuſation, and began to ſearch for it: the thief upon this took up his paddle, and ſtruck the other over the head, which made the blood run pretty freely: the other ſnatched up a kind of knife (which they uſually carry with them), made a ſtroke, and cut one of his fingers nearly off; upon this parties were formed on both ſides, and after much altercation the affair ended.

Monday 6th. The natives to-day ſupplied us plentifully with fiſh; we alſo bought near twenty gallons of train-oil, and a quantity of blubber, and ſeveral bales of fiſh dried in ſmoke, which eat much like our red-herrings. The Reſolution's fore-maſt, upon examination, proved ſo bad, that captain Cook thought it neceſſary to get it out to repair.

Tueſday 7th. The weather which had hitherto been fine, clear, and pleaſant, was to-day cloudy and foggy, and appeared very inclinable to change; we had likewiſe but few cannoes about us. The beſt part of the day was employed in getting out the Reſolution's maſt, which, with the aſſiſtance of moſt of the Diſcovery's hands, and a great deal of trouble, was at laſt effected. In the courſe of the night we had ſeveral heavy ſqualls from the eaſtward, and the whole of the next day was very rainy, and the wind at times blew a perfect hurricane. Not a canoe came near us the whole day. In the evening the ſqualls were ſo violent and inceſſant, that we were under ſome apprehenſion leſt the Diſcovery's cable and hawſers ſhould part: with much difficulty her ſmall-bower-anchor was carried out, which ſecured her effectually.

Thurſday 9th. In the courſe of the ſqualls laſt night, the Reſolution ſprung her mizen-maſt, which therefore was obliged to be got out, and a new one placed in its room. We were fortunate in being at a place where all ſizes of them could be procured, and with very little trouble. Several ſkulls and hands were purchaſed to-day as curioſities, and we bought plenty of fiſh, but ſkins of every kind were become ſcarce.

Friday 10th. From this day to the 16th, nothing occured worth mentioning. The weather was very unſettled, being ſometimes rainy, at other times foggy, and always cloudy. Three new canoes arrived, laden with various articles and ſome good furs, which were purchaſed much cheaper than any we had yet bought.

Thurſday 16th. The weather now began to alter for the better. The Reſolution's people were buſily employed in getting out the mizen-maſt, forming the new one, and getting the fore-maſt alongſide. We had many canoes, with Indians about us, with whom we trafficked for fiſh and train-oil; but ſometimes they were cunning enough to cheat us, by filling up the bladders in which it was generally contained, with water, and now and then we found in ſome nothing but water.

Several of their women were alongſide to-day, who varied in no one particular from the men in their dreſs. Theſe we were given to underſtand, were quite at the ſervice of any body who would pay them handſomely; but they met with few cuſtomers, as the fair ones were both old and ugly.

From the 17th to the 22d, the weather was fine and pleaſant, and all hands were buſy in their ſeveral departments.

Captain Cook in his pinnace attended by the Diſcovery's cutter, went up the ſound to make his obſervations upon on the different parts of it. In the courſe of his excurſion, he diſcovered two of their towns (one at a good diſtance from the other), at both of which he landed, and experienced very civil treatment from the natives. Their houſes were very indifferent, built of wood, and ſtunk abominably of fiſh, vaſt numbers of which were hung up to dry in every part of them.

On Tueſday the 21ſt, the Reſolution's new mizen-maſt was got in, and the next morning a fleet of fourteen canoes arrived from the ſouth point of the cove. They advanced with great order and regularity, ſinging to the time of their paddles, the ſtroke of which they accompanied with a ſmall bundle of ſcallop-ſhells, the noiſe of which rendered the whole not unpleaſant. One of the canoes, which apeared to be the principal one, and was very large and painted, preceded the reſt, and paraded backwards and forwards before the ſhips in a curious manner. After this piece of ceremony was ended, they divided into two parties, one going to the Reſolution, the other to the Diſcovery, and a trade was opened on both ſides, but they ſet a high price upon their goods.

Theſe people were very ſtout; ſome of their heads were ornamented with feathers tied upon a ſmall twig of a tree, and ſtuck in their hair; ſome wore a kind of necklace, and others were decorated with the green boughs of trees. Moſt of their faces were painted red, and ſome all over their bodies; their cloathing varied but little from what we had ſeen before, except one who wore a large ſkin, apparently that of the elk, with the hair off, and ornamented with various figures in black.

At nine in the morning, the captains again viſited the firſt of the Indian towns, which lies near the entrance of the harbour, where they were as well received as yeſterday. It conſiſted of two rows of houſes, very ill built, and admitting both wind and rain; the ſtench was very diſagreeable, and might be ſmelt at ſome diſtance. Their furniture conſiſted of a few baſkets and boxes, in which they put their fiſhing-tackle, &c. the remaining part of the houſe being ornamented with rows of dried fiſh. Upon the beach were ninety-four canoes, and the number of inhabitants were computed to be about four hundred.

In the afternoon, one of the ſervants of the Reſolution's gun-room, from ſome provocation received from one of the natives, wounded him in the upper part of his arm: the Indian was greatly enraged, quitted the ſhip, and went into his canoe, where he made a long harangue, and threatened very hard. The affair was not enquired into, and the man, though poſſibly very deſerving of it, was not puniſhed.

Thurſday 23d. We were now employed in bending our ſails, and getting all ready for ſea. The Indians for ſeveral days paſt brought very fine ſpring onions, which we very gladly bought, and they afterwards ſupplied us ſo well with them, that almoſt every one in the ſhips ſecured a ſea ſtock.

Friday 24th. About ſeven in the evening, juſt as it became dark, ſeven large canoes came round the north point of the cove. As the time of night was rather unſeaſonable, and we had ſome little reaſon, in conſequence of the affair which happened on Wedneſday, to ſuppoſe they intended ſome foul play, we got under arms. We might however have ſaved ourſelves the trouble, for they offered not the leaſt inſult, and ſoon after came alongſide, and began to trade. They were well laden with ſkins, particularly beaver, and were well armed.

Saturday 25th. At ſeven in the morning the Diſcovery got up her ſtream-anchor. The Indians who arrived laſt night, departed about ten this morning, after entertaining us for ſome time with ſeveral of their ſongs, which differed but little from thoſe mentioned before, except that one of them danced in an antic manner, and wore a maſk, which he varied ſeveral times during the performance.

The next day (26), the weather began to aſſume its old appearance, and the hills were overhung with fogs. At two in the afternoon, the Reſolution looſed her hawſers, got up her anchor, and with the aſſiſtance of her boats was towed out of the cove; the Diſcovery followed ſoon after, and captain Cook, as there was but little wind, began to doubt of clearing the harbour that night, and at firſt ſeemed inclinable to ſtand in for a bay which was ſituated near the town, but a little after a fine breeze ſprung up, which he was determined to make the moſt of, ſo both veſſels ſpread all their ſails, and made the beſt of their way out.

CHAP. XIV.

Account of King George's Sound—produce—animals—inhabitants—temper—dreſs—houſes—food—cookery—manufactures—canoes—fiſhing-tackle—weapons—language.

KING George's Sound is ſituated on the N. W. coaſt of America, and is extenſive; that part of it where the ſhips lay, and which we called Ship-Cove, is in latitude 49 deg. 36 min. N. and longitude 233 deg. 28 min. E. The whole ſound is ſurrounded by high land, which in ſome places appears very broken and rugged, and is in general covered with wood to the very top.

It is well ſupplied with runs of water, and wood may be procured without any difficulty, as well as maſts of any ſize, for the trees grow remarkably tall and ſtrait. The moſt prevailing ones are fir of ſeveral

ſpecies,

ſpecies, yew, and *arbor vitæ*; the others are birch, maple, poplar, willow, and elder. Of ſhrubs there are currant, gooſeberry, and roſe-trees, march ciſtus, raſpberries, whortle-berries, and brambles. The plants are much the ſame as in our part of the world, ſuch as plantain, dock, cudweed, fumitory, eye-bright, ſaxifrage, nettles, and violets. The ſoil is rich and loamy inland, but as you approach the ſhore it becomes more light and ſandy.

The only living quadrupeds we ſaw, were ſquirrels and raccoons; thoſe which we ſaw ſkins of, were the bear, wolf, deer, elk, lynx or wild cat, fox, ſea-beaver, and otter. The birds are eagles, hawks, ravens, crows, woodpeckers, creſted jays, thruſhes, a ſmall beautiful ſpecies of humming-bird, plovers, ducks, ſhags, and gulls.

We ſaw no great variety of fiſh; what we purchaſed, were chiefly of the roach and dace kind, and a ſmall fiſh very like an anchovy. The only ſhell-fiſh we obſerved,

ſerved, were muſcles, which were very plentiful among the rocks.

The tides in the cove were regular in their ebb and flow: at the full and change of the moon it was high water at twenty-ſix minutes after mid-day; its flow then was eight feet and half. Beſides this flow of the tides, we obſerved an irregular kind of outſet down the cove, which muſt have been occaſioned either by the melting of the ſnow, or the rain which fell very plentifully at times, and conſequently cauſed a more than uſual overflow.

The men, as has been before mentioned, are in general below the middle ſize, but frequently we ſaw among them ſome ſix feet high, and ſtout in proportion; but they are all badly made about the legs. Their colour has a ſtrong tinge of the copper, but it is ſo hid by dirt and filth as not to be diſcerned without ſome difficulty. They have but little beards, and the make of their face varies a good deal, ſome being as broad as they are long, others oval, but in all the cheek-bones are high and prominent.

They were good-natured and friendly, unleſs provoked; but when affronted their blood riſes immediately, and their looks as well as actions plainly ſhew that they would immediately revenge themſelves, if it was in their power. Sometimes they are in terrible paſſions, which is very evident when they make a ſpeech, or harangue each other; they foam at the mouth, and have the ſtrangeſt geſtures imaginable, and, in fact, appear like perfect madmen.

Their hair is long and ſhaggy, and naturally black, but ſo bedaubed with red-earth, greaſe, and dirt, and various other mixtures, that it is almoſt impoſſible to diſcover its real colour. The men are very whimſical in ornamenting their faces, and every day ſeems to produce a new face. When they have a mind to be particular, they make uſe of a kind of ſtamp, compoſed of the ſmall twigs of trees, and formed according to fancy: this they dip into the prepared mixture of black, red or brown earth and oil, and then preſs it upon their face, which leaves the impreſſion behind. Some black their faces entirely, and then ſprinkle ſmall particles of white or black talc (which they have here in abundance) upon it; others make one half of their face black and the other red; in ſhort, there is no end to their fancy. One of their greateſt beaux frequently was on board the ſhips; and in order to obſerve the manner of painting their faces, a looking-glaſs was ſhewn him; which he no ſooner found the uſe of than he ſat down to dreſs his face, which employed him full two hours; for he no ſooner put on one face than he diſliked it, and demoliſhed the whole, and continued rubbing out and painting, till he made one that pleaſed him.

They frequently make a hole through the griſtle of the noſe, in which they wear ſmall pieces of copper or braſs ſuſpended by a thread, and ſometimes they fill the orifice with fiſhes bones.

Upon their heads they wear a kind of bonnet of a very compact texture, from the top of which hangs a taſſel made of leather; theſe bonnets are ſometimes made with a round globular top, but in general flat. They are frequently painted or ſtained, in a rude though ingenious manner, with the form of ſome large fiſh reſembling a whale, purſued by ſeveral canoes, and a man in one of them in the act of ſtriking him.

Round their ſhoulders they wear a kind of cloak, made of the interior bark of the fir tree, and formed or wove in the ſame manner as ſome of the New Zealand hahoos: the bottom is generally fringed, and the neck part trimmed with the fur of the ſea-beaver. Some of them are made of the hair of an animal which reſembles wool, but how or where they procured it we could never learn. They likewiſe wear a kind of ſhort petticoat, compoſed of the ſame materials as the cloak, and both ſometimes ornamented with an embroidered border.

The men alſo frequently clothe themſelves in the ſkins of beaſts, particularly the bear, wolf, and ſea-beaver, and ſome have the ſkin of a large animal, which we ſuppoſed to be that of the elk or mooſe-deer, and exceedingly well tanned and dreſſed, ſomething like our buckſkin, but much thicker.

Their ornaments are bracelets, made of horn, or copper; necklaces, made of fiſh-bones, and lengths of platted hair and leather, which they wear upon their ancles and wriſts, and ſometimes upon both. They have alſo a method of marking or tattowing themſelves, ſeveral inſtances of which we ſaw; this was upon the arm, and generally was the form of a large fiſh, much reſembling that upon their bonnets.

The women are clothed nearly the ſame as the men, but their faces are not daubed or painted of different colours, though pretty well beſmeared with dirt, and they are not poſſeſſed of the fragrance of the roſe. Notwithſtanding theſe circumſtances, ſome few of our gentlemen got the better of their feelings, ſo far as to admit them to their bed, in which caſe the poor creatures always underwent the ceremony of the mop and pail, and their hair was as well combed as time would permit; for it is natural to ſuppoſe that ſuch a load of filth muſt harbour many very diſagreeable companions.

It was a prevailing opinion, that the women brought on this occaſion, were not of their own tribe, but belonging to ſome other, which they had overcome in battle. What led us to ſuppoſe ſo, was the different treatment which was obſerved between theſe and thoſe who were not expoſed in this manner. The former were mute, did not dare to look up, appeared quite dejected, and were totally under the command of thoſe who brought them; the latter on the contrary were as full of converſation as the men, behaved with eaſe, and (comparatively ſpeaking) evidently were under no kind of controul.

The houſes or habitations of theſe people, are built of wood, and are cold, filthy, and ſtinking. The roof is nearly flat, and covered with planks, which they can move as occaſion requires. They are placed ſo looſely, and at ſuch a diſtance from each other, as to admit the wind and rain with great freedom; the ſides are not much more compactly put together, ſo that they afford but little warmth. At a ſmall diſtance from the houſes a number of poles, with others tied acroſs, were erected, which ſeemed to be for the purpoſe of drying fiſh, and whale's fleſh; and in the front of moſt of the houſes was part of the trunk of a very large tree elevated upon poſts, which muſt have occaſioned them immenſe labour and pains to raiſe up in this manner;

ner; this we could never learn the uſe of.

Their furniture has been mentioned before; but at the upper end (if ſuch a diſtinction can properly be made) of ſome houſes, were placed two large carved pieces of wood, reſembling a monſtrous face. Some were of opinion that theſe were what they paid ſome degree of ſuperſtitious reſpect to, but as we never ſaw an inſtance of it, it can be but conjecture.

Their food conſiſts of blubber, freſh and dried fiſh, muſcles, which they have in great abundance, dried whale's fleſh, the roes of fiſh dried, and roots of different kinds, particularly of a ſpecies of fern, which has a ſweetiſh taſte. They boil their fiſh in wooden troughs, into which they put a conſtant ſucceſſion of red hot ſtones, and by that means keep the water ſimmering till they are ſufficiently done. Their drink is water and train oil, and in the latter they frequently dip their dry muſcles and fiſh.

The interior bark of the fir-tree, is what they manufacture their cloaks of, in general. After it is dry, they beat it with a bone-inſtrument, which has grooves in it on one ſide, ſomething like thoſe of the Society Iſles, till the fibres are ſufficiently ſeparated, after which it is fit for uſe.

The boxes and cheſts which theſe people make are ſometimes very large, and ornamented with human teeth and carved work; at the latter they are very clever and ingenious; we purchaſed of them variety of images in different attitudes, but they principally excel in their imitations of the heads of animals, and the human face, ſome of which are by no means contemptible.

Their canoes are of various ſizes; the largeſt being capacious enough to contain fifty people, the ſmalleſt three. The principal ones are ornamented at the head and ſtern with human teeth placed in various forms, and their ſides with the figures of beaſts and large fiſh, rudely painted in white. They are apparently made out of one tree, but the upper part of the head and ſtern are ſeparate pieces, and tied on by cords, made of the twiſted bark of the fir-tree. They are very dexterous in managing theſe canoes, and keep very exact time with their paddles, which are about five feet long, the blade and pointed extremity being near two thirds of the whole.

We ſaw ſcarce any tools amongſt them except knives, which were of a ſemicircular form, and badly made, but it is evident that they muſt have others from the manner in which they carve.

Theſe people are very ingenious in making calls to imitate the notes of different birds and animals, by which means they take great numbers; they likewiſe make uſe of whalebone ſprings, like thoſe uſed with us to catch ſnipes. Amongſt other articles of trade, they frequenrly brought brids of ſeveral kinds for ſale, particularly a beautiful ſpecies of humming-bird, and a bird of the ſnipe kind, and it is not improbable but ſome of them were caught in this manner.

Their fiſhing-tackle is of ſeveral kinds. That which they uſe in killing the whale, is ſometimes compoſed of bone, and ſometimes of ſhell. That of bone is about ſix inches in length, very ſharp at the end, and furniſhed with two barbs, one above the other: the upper end of this is ſo contrived, by means of a ſocket, as to fix upon a rod or pole about ten feet in length; this rod is forked at the end, ſo that two of the pieces of bone are to be fixed on at the ſame time. To that extremity of the bone, which is placed upon the pole, is tied a long and very ſtrong rope, at the end of which is fixed a ſeal-ſkin blown up. The animal is no ſooner ſtruck than the bone ſlips out of the ſocket, and remains fixed in its body, and the ſeal-ſkin prevents it from keeping long under water, when they purſue it, and ſoon pierce it to death with their ſpears. The others are made of muſcle-ſhells, ground very ſharp at the ſide as well as point, and are exactly upon the ſame plan as the others.

Their fiſh-hooks are made of bone, with a very ſharp and barbed point; their uſual bait are muſcles. Their method of catching ſmall fiſh is by means of a kind of grate, made of ſmall pieces of wood tied together; this they place in the narrow ſtreams or inlets about the time of high water; all the fiſh which were between this and the ſea muſt of courſe be left behind at low water.

The weapons uſed by them, are ſpears, pata-patows, and bows and arrows. The ſpears are of different lengths, and pointed with bone; the pata-patows are made ſome of wood and others of ſtone, and nearly of the ſame form as thoſe of New-Zealand. Their bows are about four feet and half in length, made of yew, and rather round in the middle, from whence they increaſe in width and become flat, gradually tapering to a point; the ſtring is made of twiſted gut. The arrows are near three feet in length, and feathered at one end, the other is ſometimes pointed with bone, ſometimes with copper, and frequently with muſcle-ſhell, but always barbed.

Theſe people were very fond of pieces of braſs, copper, tin, and pewter, particularly if bright, and formed ſo as to make bracelets: even buttons were good trade; theſe they tied with a piece of ſtring and put round their wriſts. Iron did not appear to be much valued, though they very readily took it; it is certain that they muſt have ſome way of procuring it, and probably from the ſouthward towards California, for they had a number of knives of different ſizes, but all made very badly, and in a ſemicircular form.

One day when trade was going on along-ſide the Reſolution, the natives offered two ſilver ſpoons to ſale, which were immediately purchaſed and given to captain Cook: they appeared to be of a very old make, and were ſomewhat different from our's in form. We were not able to learn from whence they had them, but this circumſtance favours our belief of their having connections to the ſouthward.

Their language is harſh and diſagreeable; an idea may be formed of it from the following vocabulary.

A.

Aaˋˊtaob	Bone of any kind,
Aˋchi-lik	What does he ſay?
Acho-choˋmer	A kind of wool, of which ſome of their cloaks were made.
Achoˋck-luk	What is this?
Aˋck-amumpts	Graſs.
Aˋhaa	That.
Ahaˋ-ahah	To breathe.

Aˋllah	Look this way. This is made uſe of, when ſpeaking to any one and they do not hear.
Alleˋ-ſamah	Cold.
Alon-iˋxſoop	To tie a knot.
Amaˋm-nultz	A fiſh of the herring kind.
Aˋn-ama	The nipple.
Aow-coˋomer	The image of a man.
Aow-watliˋnna	An eagle.
Aˋpſoop	The hair.
Apuck-ſama	The beard.
Ark-aˋkqua	To cut.
Aſh-poˋoner	The currant-buſh.
Aˋſh-luſe	The face.
Asˋ-luctz	The lip.
A'weˋ-amus	The cheek.

C.

Caˋſſa	The eye.
Cauˋts-hock	Cloathing.
Cheche-anacooˋma	The fingers.
Cheche-cˋheah	The teeth.
Cheˋcletz	A baſket.
Chiˋl-ahak	The nails.
Chim-iˋnney	A fiſh-hook.
Chetoˋ-eltz	A weapon reſembling a New Zealand patow.
Choˋap	The tongue.
Claˋh-aſheet	To get up.

Clahclack-toˋma	The foot.
Claˋ-umiz	Train-oil.
Claˋt-war	To paddle.
Claˋy-whamiz	The clouds.
Cˋlecletz	To ſhoot an arrow or fire a gun.
Clyoˋmi	Give me ſomething more.
Co-conixˋo	The hand.
Coˋ-os	A man.
Cor	Shew it me.
Co-tioˋ	A ſword or knife.

E.

Eˋlſeet	Fiſh of any kind.
Eˋmick	Fire.
Eniſh or r No	The ſky.
En-ooˋme	To ſuck.
Eˋ-oo-mer	To eat.
Etch-aˋttow	A ſpear.
Etts-auk	Wood.
Etts-muˋcket	The root of the fern-plant.

H.

Hˋack-onek	A box.
Hˋaiyea	A ſnake.
How-whilk	Friend.

I.

Iˋſuck	Onions.
Jah-iˋſimer	A racoon.

Jaˋh-putz	A canoe.
Jah-poˋaks	Copper, or braſs.

K.

Kah-aˋnne	A crow.
Kaˋts-kahmany	A butterfly.
Kleˋt-hock	A bear-ſkin.
Kom-meˋtcha	To hop.
Kom-mu-ˋttle ſheet	To run.
Koˋos-hinne	A raven.
Koˋſha	Smoak.
Koˋw-iltz	To ſteal.
Koˋw-weeb	The elder-tree.

L.

Laˋla-leach	To look at.
Luˋk-ſheet	Freſh water.

M.

Maˋki-liſa	A bow-ſtring.
Maa-koˋok	Trade or barter.
Moakˋſa	A ſtone.
Mooſtaˋtte	A bow.
Muˋm-mow	A town.

N.

Nah-heir	Give me.
Neˋat-ſaw.	The noſe.

O.

Oˋka-mahiˋ	Rain.
Okuˋmeltz	A cup, bowl, or baſon.
Oˋpultz	The ſun or moon.
Oˋubtz	A ſmall kind of curlew.
Ow-haˋpa	A paddle.

P.

Paˋh-pa	The ear.
Pooˋk-ſhleet	To blow.

Q.

Qua-quaˋaker	The ſea-beaver.
Queˋ-is	Snow.
Qui, aˋrtzik	A wolf-ſkin.

S.

Sa-aharˋty	An arrow.
Sah-ſinna	A humming-bird.
Sak-kiˋa	A ſong.
Saˋ-warp	The chin.
Seˋ-books	A hat or cap.
Sikeˋts-ſko	A rope.
Slootˋs-mar	A woman.
So-wah	You.

T.

Tſi-kiˋmminy	Iron.
Taˋx-pleet	To ſit down.

Ton-

Tonˋ-os	A boy,
Tooˋ-pilſh	The ſea.
Too-quˋea	A bead or button.

W.

Wah-coˋſh	Friendſhip.
Weˋnah	Strangers.
Whick	No
Waſſau	Where is.

Their method of counting nnmbers.

Sawˋ-wak	1	Atˋla-po
Aˋtla	2	Aˋtla-quaſh
Caˋtſa	3	Saw'-aquaſh
Mo	4	High-ho
Soˋcha	5	Saw-kats
Noˋpo	6	

CHAP. XV.

Departure from King George's Sound—the Reſolution ſprings a leak—experience much blowing weather—continue to trace the coaſt—Captain Cook goes on ſhore—we diſcover Sandwich Sound—and anchor there—ſome of the Americans make their appearance—deſcription of them—weigh our anchors and ſtand on, but the weather proving bad are at night obliged to let them go again—more of the natives viſit us, but behave inſolently—account of them—proceed through the Sound—ſome account of it.

WE got out of the ſound juſt after dark, ſteering nearly a weſt courſe, to get clear of the land, with a fine gale from the E. S. E. In the courſe of the night it blew very freſh, and the weather was dark and rainy: in this ſituation the Reſolution ſprung aleak in her ſtarb oard-quarter, which alarmed captain Cook exceedingly at firſt, but every one exerting themſelves, it was fortunately diſcovered and ſtopped. Having loſt ſight of the Diſcovery, ſhe lay-to till half paſt five in the morning, and having joined her, they both proceeded together. About ten, the gale increaſed, and became ſo violent, that we took in every ſail except the fore-ſail, and ſoon after balanced the mizen. Towards the afternoon it moderated, and about five was nearly calm. As the night approached, the wind again increaſed with ſhowers of rain, which continued almoſt the whole of the next day (April 28th), with a heavy rolling ſea.

The 29th, was cloudy with moderate gales: our latitude was 51 deg. 56 min. N. and we paſſed a piece of rock-weed. We now kept about a N. N. E. courſe, and the next day ſaw a ſeal, and a land bird of the ſnipe kind. May 1ſt, was moderate and fair, with a few ſhowers of hail, and our latitude was 54 deg. 43 min. N. At half paſt ſeven in the evening, we ſaw the land extending from N. ½ E. to E. N. E. about ſix leagues diſtant. Our weather on the 2d was cloudy, with ſhowers of ſmall rain; but the land was very viſible on our ſtarboard-ſide, appearing very high, and almoſt covered with ſnow. It lay in a N. W. and S. E. direction per compaſs, and the ſhore appeared bold-to: we paſſed ſeveral inlets, which had the appearance of good harbours. Our latitude at noon was 56 deg. 52 min. N. and we ſaw a large flock of geeſe.

The 3d we paſſed running along ſhore, as well as light winds would permit us. At noon, the land bore from S. 77 deg. E. to N. 55 deg. W. and at eight in the evening, S. 85 deg. E. and N. 44. deg W. diſtant about five leagues. The weſtern extreme appeared as a high mountain, which proved to be mount St. Elias, near which captain Bering anchored in 1741. We paſſed a great quantity of weed to-day, and ſaw a ſeal and a whale.

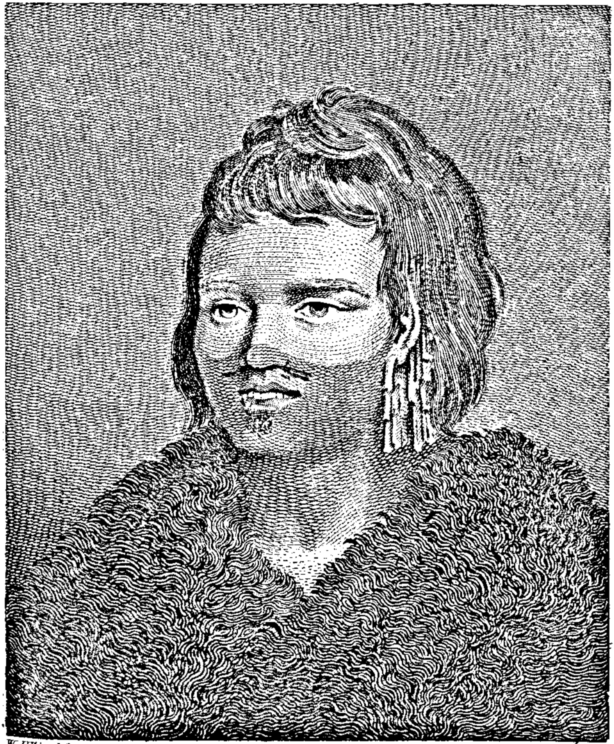
The 4th was fine and clear, with light breezes, which induced us to ſtand nearer in for the land. Our latitude was 58 deg. 21 min. N. and longitude 220 deg. 36 E. we ſaw a great number of ſeals and ſeveral whales, with innumerable flocks of gulls and brown petrels.

The 5th, 6th, and 7th, were fine and pleaſant, with light winds, and ſmooth water, which rendered our approach to Cape St. Elias very ſlow. We had now numbers of whales about, and on the 6th, at three in the afternoon ſounded, and found a ſtiff muddy bottom at the depth of ſixty fathom. From the 8th to the 10th, we had ſcarce any wind. In the evening of the 9th, me ſaw land to the weſtward of cape St. Elias, the extremes extending at eight from S. 84 deg. W. to N. 42 deg. E.

Our latitude on the 10th, was 59 deg. 52 min. N. and at noon the land extended from N. 60 deg. W. to E. by N. our diſtance from the ſhore about three leagues. We had light airs and calms almoſt throughout the next day, till towards evening, when a fine breeze ſprung up from the eaſtward. During the calm, captain Cook ordered out a boat, and went on ſhore at the neareſt place, which was an iſland not above a league from us. He ſaw a red fox, which made off as ſoon as it ſaw him. Whilſt he was abſent, we ſounded two or three times, and found a muddy bottom at thirty fathom. In the evening we ſaw many ſeals in pairs.

The 12th was heavy and cloudy, with a breeze from the eaſtward. At five in the morning, we ſaw the appearance of an inlet bearing N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and at ſeven ſounded, and got ground at fifty-three fathom, muddy bottom, about ſix or ſeven leagues off ſhore. At eight we bore away, keeping a S. W. courſe, when that point of it ſet at five, bore N. by E. $\frac{3}{4}$ E. At noon, we diſcovered another opening, the eaſtermoſt part of which bore due W. our latitude being 59 deg. 54 min. N. At half paſt twelve we bore away for this opening; at three, the weather became hazy and foggy, with ſmall drizzling rain, and at four the Reſolution hauled up to N. N. E. for a deep bay on the eaſtern ſide of the opening, which formed a cape by the falling back of the land; this cape was named Cape Hinchinbrook. At five, our ſoundings were from five to nine fathoms, and at ſix we anchored in twelve fathom, muddy bottom. The harbour in which we lay, appeared to be ſurrounded in every direction by land, which was much higher than at King George's ſound, and more covered with ſnow. The ſhore was compoſed almoſt entirely of rocks, nearly perpendicular, but of no very great height with here and there a ſmall ſandy beach. The trees were of the ſame kind as at the laſt place, but not ſo large or numerous, nor did they grow up to the tops of the mountains.

Soon after we had anchored, a party were ſent in the Reſolution's pinnace to explore the oppoſite ſide of the bay, and our ſeamen on board got out their hooks and lines, and in a ſhort time caught ſeveral fine cod-fiſh, which proved a perfect treat. The pinnace had not been gone above twenty minutes, before they deſcried two canoes with near thirty Americans in them, paddling towards her. Upon this they pulled back towards the ſhips, and the canoes followed at ſome diſtance. When they arrived pretty near the ſhips, they began a kind of ſong, ſomething reſembling thoſe of the natives of King George's Sound, at the ſame time paddling round the ſhips; this done, they advanced nearer, but could not be perſuaded to come alongſide. They were a better looking people than the laſt, and were fat and jolly, as if they lived well. Some were clothed with ſkins of birds ſewed together, and made like a ſhirt, others had the ſkins of beaſts made in the



W. Ellis del.

J. Heath, sculp.

A Native

of Sandwich Sound.

Publish'd Dec.r 14 1781 by G. Robinson.

ſame form. Two had caps on their heads, nearly the ſame as at the other place: moſt of their faces were daubed with red earth, and one had half his face black.

Their canoes were conſtructed upon a different plan from thoſe of King George's ſound, they were much broader, and apparently more commodious. They conſiſted of a frame, which was covered with the ſkin of ſome large fiſh, brought over the ſides, and was then braced very tight, and faſtened in the inſide of the canoe: their paddles were roughly made, were very light and differently ſhaped from the laſt, not ending in that long point. Their language we did not underſtand.

The boat being alongſide, Captain Clerke gave one of them a glaſs bowl, which pleaſed the man ſo much that he pulled off his dreſs, which was made of bird's ſkins, and threw it into the boat, making ſigns that it ſhould be carried on board. Another gave one of our people an arrow, which differed in nothing from thoſe of the laſt place, except in being more clumſily made, and having a deep diviſion at the bone end, for the reception of a pointed ſtone, or ſome other ſubſtance. Theſe people appeared well diſpoſed, and after a ſhort ſtay departed.

The 13th was very thick, cloudy, and hazy, with drizzling rain and ſqualls. At ten we got up our anchors and made ſail. We continued ſtanding on till four in the afternoon, when, though we could ſee to no great diſtance, we found we were ſurrounded with a number of iſlands or broken land, forming deep ſounds, iſlands, and bays, one of which on the eaſtern-ſide we hauled up for. The wind blew in very hard ſqualls down the bay, with ſhowers of hail and ſleet; and the weather being very unſettled, and likely to continue ſo, it was deemed moſt prudent to anchor as ſoon as poſſible. At five, we were a-breaſt of the bay, and carried ſoundings from twenty-five to ſix fathoms, and between eight and nine we let go our anchors in twelve fathoms, with a muddy bottom, in the mouth of a large cove.

In the morning about five, ſeveral canoes put off, and came alongſide the Diſcovery; but ſeeing only one or two of our people upon deck (for as it was early the reſt were not up), they came on board without aſking, and by their behaviour did not appear to be ſo well diſpoſed as we could have wiſhed. They ſtole ſeveral things in an inſtant, and upon being deſired to return them, one of them pulled out a large knife, which he had beneath his dreſs, and ſeemed by his actions to threaten to kill the firſt man that ſhould oppoſe him. Another threw the rudder of the ſmall cutter overboard, which he immediately followed, and made off with. Theſe and ſeveral other proceedings of the like nature, induced the captain (who had been juſt informed of what had happened) to order all hands to be called, which was no ſooner done, than upon ſeeing ſuch a number of people coming upon deck, they all made off as faſt as they could, got into their canoes, and paddled away.

Theſe people vary in ſome things from thoſe we ſaw the day before yeſterday. Their dreſs was made of the guts of fiſh ſewed together, with ſleeves down to their wriſts; under this they had jackets made of the ſkins of beaſts. They had caps on their heads like the laſt Indians, and their under lip was cut through lengthwiſe; through this opening they frequently put their tongue. Some of them had blue beads, and other ornaments fixed in this ſlit, and alſo through the griſtle of the noſe. They had ſeveral ſpears, which were all headed with iron; their knives were near eighteen inches long, and ſhaped ſomething like a hanger, theſe they wore round their necks. From the circumſtance of the beads and iron, we thought it probable that they might by ſome means or other have connexions with the Ruſſians, who have extended their trade an immenſe way. Their canoes were covered entirely with ſkins, and a round opening in the middle where the perſon ſeats himſelf, and faſtens the ſkin ſo tight round his middle as totally to exclude the entrance of water. Their paddles were about four feet long and well made. In the courſe of the day, the wind was ſo violent that we thought it neceſſary to moor the ſhips.

On the 15th, the wind abated greatly, but the rain continued. At eleven in the morning, ſeveral of the Americans came alongſide in their canoes, and brought the calumet of peace with them, being conſcious poſſibly that they had not behaved properly the day before. This was the firſt inſtance we ſaw of it; it was a ſtick about four feet long, upon which in different parts were tied the feathers of birds, and perfectly anſwered the deſcription given in the Ruſſian voyages and diſcoveries.

One of them offered it ſeveral times to ſome of our people who were in the boat. alongſide, but they taking no notice of him, he at laſt threw it into the boat. Some few had their faces painted, or rather daubed with red-earth; and many wore gloves made of the ſkin of animals, as well as ſtockings with the hairy ſide inwards.

They had bows and arrows with them; ſome of the latter were pointed with copper: we likewiſe ſaw a larger kind of arrows of rather darts, ſome about five feet, others between ſix and ſeven feet long. Thoſe of five feet they throw by means of a piece of wood about a foot long, with a ſmall hollow or groove in the middle, which receives the dart; at the bottom is a hole for the reception of one finger, which enables them to graſp the piece of wood much firmer, and to throw with greater force. They are pointed with a piece of bone near four inches long, which readily takes in and out. The larger ones are furniſhed with a bladder and line, and are for the purpoſe of killing the ſea-beaver.

Theſe people were fond of blue beads, for five or ſix of which a beaver-ſkin might be purchaſed worth ninety or a hundred dollars.

The next day (May 16th), was rainy during the whole morning, but in the afternoon it became fine and pleaſant, and we had many canoes alongſide trading. This place abounds with innumerable flocks of wild fowl, and many ſhooting-parties were out, but they always returned with very little game, occaſioned by the great ſhyneſs of the birds, which probably are harraſſed a good deal by the natives.

At half paſt two the next morning, we weighed and made ſail with a light breeze, our courſe being about S. W. but we found ourſelves ſo ſurrounded with land, that we were at a loſs in ſome meaſure which way to proceed. At eight, our ſoundings were from fifty to fifteen fathoms at about one mile from ſhore, and from fifteen to five off a cluſter of rocks.

At eleven, we ſhoaled from ten to five fathom, and ſoon after the winds became very light, and the weather had an unpromiſing appearance, in conſequence of which captain Cook gave orders to bring the ſhips to an anchor, as ſoon as they could be got to a convenient ſpot. At noon, our latitude was 60 deg. 51 min. N. and at half paſt two we came-to in nineteen fathom, a muddy bottom.

The captain having received intelligence from ſome of the natives of an opening at or near the bottom of the bay we now were in, thought it a good opportunity to aſcertain the truth of it. Soon after, boats from both ſhips were ſent, well-manned and armed, with orders to the officers to proceed in different directions, and penetrate as far as they thought prudent. They returned in the evening, but diſcovered nothing of any conſequence.

The next morning at half paſt three we again weighed and made ſail, our courſe being nearly due ſouth, but the wind was ſo light that we made poor work of it. We were now ſtanding acroſs to the oppoſite or weſtern ſide of this extenſive ſound. At noon, our latitude was 60 deg. 31 min. N. and our longitude about 212 deg. 36 min. E. In the afternoon about four, a large canoe, with ſeven Americans, overtook us, and made ſigns for a boat to be got out, and go alongſide them, to trade. This requeſt of their's was complied with, but nothing was purchaſed except a cap, as they did not appear fond of our articles of trade, which conſiſted of knives, hatchets, and beads of different ſorts. They varied in no reſpect from thoſe we ſaw on the 16th, except having more ornaments in the ſlit of their under lip. At five the wind ſhifted, which obliged us to tack; at half paſt ſix our ſoundings were fifty fathoms, the bottom coarſe ſand, and at ten they varied from twelve to twenty fathoms.

We were obliged to tack frequently in the night, and proceed with great care and circumſpection, there being many rocks ſcattered in various parts of the channel we were now entering.

As we went on the next day (May 19th), we ſaw an incredible number of whales and ſeals ſporting round us, from whence we concluded that we were nearly out of the ſound, and not far from the ſea. Soon after the weather became thick and foggy, with ſmall rain, and at half paſt ten our ſoundings were twenty-two fathom, muddy bottom. At five in the afternoon we ſounded again, and got from thirty-three to twenty-one fathom, and at nine let go our anchors for the night, in twenty-ſeven fathom, about three miles from the eaſtern ſhore.

The next morning was thick and foggy. About ten, a fine little breeze ſprung up from the N. N. E. which both ſhips took the advantage of, weighed their anchors, and made all ſail. The beſt part of the afternoon we were ſtanding through the channel, and at five, being clear of it, and again in the open ſea, we ſaw land as far to the ſouthward as S. 53 deg. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. which extreme at ſix bore S. 7 deg. W.

Sandwich Sound, ſo called by captain Cook in honour of his lordſhip, is very large and extenſive. It is formed on the weſtern ſide by a long iſland, which was called Montagu Iſland, and is bounded on the eaſtern ſide, by the continent, at leaſt what we ſuppoſed to be the continent, though it is not improbable but it may be a chain of iſlands.

From what little we ſaw of it, the productions appear to be much the ſame as at King George's Sound. The ſoil is deep and black, intermixed in ſome places with ſtreaks of blue clay.

It affords excellent ſhelter for all kinds of water fowl, but they are ſhy to a degree. The principal land-birds we ſaw were eagles, thruſhes, growſe, owls, ſnipes, and ſeveral ſmaller birds. We met with no quadrupeds, but frequently ſaw the tracks of bears in the ſnow.

The inhabitants of this place ſeem to form the line of connection between thoſe of King George's Sound, and the natives of Unalaſchka, and the other weſtern parts of America. Like the former, they daub their faces, have the ſame ſtrange geſtures (though not in ſo high a degree) when they make a ſpeech, wear nearly the ſame caps, and ſome of them are clothed in the ſkins of beaſts. But they are much more ſimilar to the latter; their hair is cut ſhort; they have the ſame bladder dreſs; their canoes are covered with ſkin in the ſame manner; they have a hole in the under lip, in which they fix ornaments, and many of their weapons are exactly the ſame.

CHAP. XVI.

Leave Sandwich Sound, and continue to trace the coaſt—diſcover the river Turn-again—tranſactions during our courſe up and down the river—occurrences during our run along the coaſt till our arrival in Providence Bay.

WE had a fine freſh breeze on the twenty-firſt, from the N. W. which aſſiſted us greatly, and we continued to trace the coaſt, which ran nearly in a S. W. direction. The land was not ſo high as that of Sandwich Sound, but equally rugged and uneven, and almoſt entirely covered with ſnow. Our latitude, at noon, was 59 deg. 30 min. N. and our longitude 208 deg. 44 min. E. We paſſed much rock-weed, ſtraw, pieces of ſticks, and feathers, which moſt likely came from ſome inlet or river.

The next day (22d), our breeze changed to a gale, 'which handled us very roughly, and made us cloſe-reef our top-ſails, but we ſtill kept nearly a S. S. W. courſe, though at a good diſtance from the land. At eleven we ſaw more land, bearing S. W. and at noon were in latitude 58 deg. 23 min. N. In the afternoon the wind became more moderate, and at ſix we tacked ſhip, and ſtood to the northward.

The 3d was clear and pleaſant, but rendered cold by the wind which blew off the land. At half paſt ten, being well in with it, tacked; at noon, our latitude was 59 deg. 9 min. N. The land here formed a conſiderable bay, and bid fair for ſome diſcovery, which induced Captain Cook to examine it. The whole of the next day was ſpent in turning to windward, and we ſaw numbers of ſhags, gulls, and puffins.

The weather on the 25th, was pleaſant, with a fine breeze from the N. N. E. our courſe being N. W. At ſeven, our ſoundings were from thirty-two to twenty fathom, with a rocky bottom. About nine, we ſaw the appearance of a wide inlet, upon our larboard bow, which we hoped to derive ſome advantage from, and ſoon after obſerved a large ſmoke upon a part of the land, which had the appearance of an iſland. At noon, the eaſtern part of this ſuppoſed iſland bore S. 37 deg. E. about nine leagues diſtant, and the inlet mentioned above N. N. W. ½ W. for which we were now directing our courſe, our latitude being 58 deg. 40 min. N. At three, were ſtanding through the inlet, which proved to be a channel through a cluſter of ſmall, high rocky iſles, the ſouthermoſt of which was a remarkable ſugar-loaf hill, and round the ſides and top of which innumerable flocks of brown petrels were flying. This, at half paſt three, bore E. by S. and the northermoſt iſle bore due north; our diſtance from ſhore being a mile and a half, and our ſoundings from thirty ſix to ſeventeen fathoms. At half paſt four, finding we could not paſs between the iſles as we at firſt intended, on account of the ebb-tide which was running very ſtrong, we bore away in order to go round the cluſter, the ſugar-loaf hill bearing N. 59 deg. E. and a very high ſnowy mountain to the weſtward, which was called Mount St. Auguſtine, N. 75 deg. W. At ſeven, we were pretty well in, but diſcerned more land than we expected.

The next morning (26th), the wind chopped round to the north, which was the very direction we wanted to ſteer in: our courſe now was E. N. E. and it blew freſh at times, with a much heavier ſea than could be expected conſidering the manner in which we were ſurrounded by land. At noon our latitude was 59 deg. 9 min. N. when Mount St. Auguſtine bore N. 84 deg. ½ W. diſtant about nine or ten leagues. At five, we were ſtanding into a bay, which appeared to contain a good harbour; but at half paſt ſix we tacked and ſtood out again, our ſoundings being twenty-three fathom, with a bottom of ſand and mud.

The land which ſurrounded this bay was high, and had a barren aſpect; the bottom was in many places clothed with trees, but they were apparently ſtinted in their growth; the middle and tops of the hills had not a ſhrub of any kind upon them, and ſeemed to be little elſe than ſolid rock. The ſnow lay but in ſmall quantities, owing perhaps to the winds which at times blow here very violently. At ſeven, the Reſolution ſplit her jib in a ſquall.

On the 27th, we had thick, foggy weather, with ſmall drizzling rain, and light breezes, for the beſt part of the day. At ten, our ſoundings were forty fathoms, with a rocky bottom. Soon after the wind ſhifted, when we ſteered a N. N. W. courſe, and at five in the afternoon it hauled farther round to the ſouthward. We were now ſtanding up a channel, which was formed on the eaſt ſide by a track of low level land, and in the weſt by a high broken land, making in large lumps, which probably form iſlands. At ſeven our breeze freſhened from the ſouthward, which however proved but of little uſe to us, as the tide was ſo ſtrong that we loſt ground conſiderably. At nine, we had light airs and calms; and at twelve our ſoundings were twenty-three fathoms, the bottom ſand and gravel.

The next morning at two, our ſoundings were from twenty-ſix to thirty-three fathoms. At five, we found the tide running ſo ſtrong as to carry us aſtern at a very conſiderable rate; we therefore thought it neceſſary to anchor, and the Diſcovery, having got ground at twenty-two fathom, a grey ſandy bottom, let go her's, but having neglected to ſecure the cable properly with the dog-ſtopper, the tide carried her ſo faſt a ſtern, that had not the ſplice of the other cable been too large to paſs eaſily through the hawſe-hole, in all probability ſhe would have loſt both anchor and cables. The Reſolution was not ſo lucky, having loſt her anchor and cable. After the ſhips were ſecured, the log was tried to aſcertain the rate of the tide, which was found to run at the rate of four miles an hour.

At ten we weighed and made ſail, and at half paſt eleven anchored again. The Reſolution ſent two of her boats to endeavour to regain her anchor and cable, but they did not ſucceed. Some time after, we ſaw a canoe with two Indians in it making for the ſhips, but the tide prevented their reaching us. The eaſtern ſhore ſeemed to be inhabited, as we ſaw ſeveral ſmokes and fires upon it, for which reaſon captain Cook called it Smoky Cape. At eight in the evening, having a fine breeze from the eaſtward, both veſſels weighed and made ſail, though the tide was at that time againſt us. The tide that ſets to the northward, we found by a lead and line to be a flood-tide, a circumſtance which proved unfavourable to our wiſhes, as we were at firſt in hopes of finding a paſſage into the northern ſeas, without going any farther to the weſtward.

At five the next morning (May 29th), wind and tide being againſt us, we came-to in twenty-four fathoms, the bottom ſand and ſtones. At half paſt twelve we weighed, the tide ſetting to the northward, and at ſix let go our anchor again. The low land on the eaſtern ſide had a fertile appearance, and was well covered with trees; it was very level, with here and there a ſmall eminence, upon the tops of which was a little ſnow, the other parts being entirely free from it. Behind this runs a ridge of ſnowy mountains. The weſtern ſhore conſiſted of very irregular ſnowy hills; the northermoſt part had a ridge of low land apparently at ſome diſtance from the hills. We ſaw very few birds about, it being near the breeding ſeaſon; now and then a porpus ſhewed his back above water.

May 30th, at one in the morning, we weighed and made ſail. The tide ſetting to the ſouthward, ended about three quarters paſt twelve. At three our ſoundings were from nineteen to twenty-ſix fathom, a ſandy bottom, and at four the north point of the eaſtern land bore N. 4 deg. W. At half paſt ſix, the northerly tide having run its courſe, we anchored about five miles from the weſtern ſhore. The northern extreme of the eaſtern land now made in a kind of bluff, bearing N. by W. and ſeemed to make a curve to the N. E. the weſtern ſhore altered its appearance, and became conſiderably lower, trending towards the eaſtern. At noon our latitude obſerved was 60 deg. 37 min. N. and at one we weighed, and proceeded up the river, for ſuch it appeared to be. Soon after, two canoes from the eaſtern ſhore, with an Indian in each, came alongſide, of whom we bought a ſmall ſkin, and a harpoon or dart, like thoſe of the natives of Sandwich Sound. They appeared to be the ſame kind of people, and differed in no one reſpect, their ca noes too were the ſame. At ſix, our ſoundings were from forty-two to thirteen fathom, and at eight we let go our anchors in twenty fathom, with a bottom of yellow clay and mud. This tide befriended us greatly, for notwithſtanding we were turning to windward, and of courſe obliged to tack frequently, we made nearly twelve leagues. We were now about two miles from the weſtern ſide of the river, which had a fine and beautiful appearance, being every where covered with trees. The ſhores now trended to the N. W.

At three quarters paſt one, the next morning (31ſt), the ſtream ſetting to the ſouthward ended, and at three we got up our anchors, made ſail, and purſued our courſe. At ſix we had from thirty-two to fifteen fathoms, at half paſt eight the tide ended, ſetting to the northward, and at half paſt nine we anchored again. Soon after, five canoes, viz. two large and three ſmall, with ſeveral of the natives, who had for ſome time been endeavouring to overtake us, came under our ſtern; in each of the large canoes were ſixteen or ſeventeen people, in the ſmall ones two. We purchaſed very little of them, as their viſit ſeemed to be the effect of curioſity, and they were not very willing to trade. Their dreſs was made of the ſkins of ſmall animals ſewed together, and furniſhed with ſleeves. This animal is called by the Ruſſians, yevraſhka. Their cheek bones were very high, and one of them had ſome blue beads in the ſlit of the under-lip. At firſt, the weather was very thick and hazy, which greatly obſtructed our viſion; but about noon it became more clear, and we ſaw a large inlet on the eaſtern ſhore, bearing N. 76 deg. E. which from its ſituation may poſſibly have ſome connexion with Sandwich Sound: the reſt of our view was terminated on all ſides by land, ſome of which was very low, and nearly on a level with the water. Our latitude to-day by account was 61 deg. 12 min. N.

At three, captain Cook ſent his and the Diſcovery's cutters to explore an opening behind the low land. At four we weighed and ſtood nearer in ſhore, and at half paſt ſix came-to again. Some little time after, ſeveral Americans, in ſeven canoes, put off from the weſtern ſhore, and came along-ſide. We purchaſed ſeveral articles in the curioſity-way, ſuch as bows, arrows, ſkin-jackets, darts, and martin ſkins. They had a great number of blue beads, which they prized very highly: it is very probable that the Ruſſians from Ochotſzk and Kamtſchatka viſit theſe people frequently and regularly, on account of the furs, &c. which no doubt turn to very good account.

At one in the morning (June 1ſt), the cutters returned, with an account of having found an opening to the north eaſtward, behind the narrow ridge of land, into a kind of river or lake; the broadeſt part they were in, was between four and five leagues acroſs, the narroweſt about two miles. It appeared to extend a conſiderable way, and they had ſoundings from fifteen to twenty fathoms, the bottom ſand and ſmall ſtones.

At four we weighed, and at eight the Reſolution made the ſignal for the Diſcovery's large cutter, which with their own were ſent to explore the inlet on the eaſtern ſhore. Our ſoundings were from ſeven to ſeventeen fathoms, When we got up our anchors this morning, we found from the moſt exact obſervations we could make, that the tide had fallen between twenty-three and twenty-four feet. At eleven we anchored, and at half paſt, the cutters returned; the wind and tide were ſo much againſt them, as to prevent their entrance; but they ſaw enough to convince them that it was needleſs to attempt any thing farther, as the land to all appearance joined on all ſides. Having thus explored this river as far as it was poſſible to carry the ſhips, nothing now remained, but for us to make the beſt of our way back again. Captain Cook called it the River Turnagain At half paſt two, the cutters with an officer were ſent to take poſſeſſion of this part of America, and at four we weighed, but at ſeven let go our anchors again. At half paſt ſeven the boats returned: they had met with ſeveral of the natives, who at firſt appeared afraid and retired among the trees, but afterwards, finding our people had no intention to hurt them, they readily came forward. They had many dogs with them, one of which was bought, and carried on board as a freſh meal, and two or three pieces of ſalmon, which were alſo purchaſed. The ſoil was good, but only about a foot deep, under which was a bed of cold ſand with a ſmall mixture of clay: there were abundance of trees, ſuch as willows, birch, poplar, elder, fir, and many raſpberry, roſe, and currant-trees. At half paſt eleven, the tide being favourable, we weighed, and at twelve the point where the cutters landed, which was called Point Poſſeſſion, bore S. E. ½ S. our diſtance off ſhore ſix or ſeven miles. Our latitude to-day was 61 deg. 6 min. N.

We came-to at five the next morning, in ſeventeen fathoms, ſandy bottom, about four miles off ſhore, when Point Poſſeſſion bore N. 61 deg. E. Several of the natives came off to us in their canoes, of whom we bought bows, arrows, quivers, and various other articles in the curioſity-way, as alſo ermine, martin, and fox ſkins.

At half paſt ten the tide became favourable, and we weighed, but at two the Reſolution ſtruck on a bank with only two and two and half fathoms of water upon it, where ſhe continued till flood-tide. The Diſcovery immediately anchored as per ſignal from the Reſolution. At ſix, it being nearly high water, ſhe hoiſted her ſails and got off, ſtanding out beynd the ſhoal, when ſhe anchored. Many of the natives now came to us, of whom we bought ſome excellent freſh ſalmon, and likewiſe ſome large pieces of halibut. This afforded us a treat which we had not experienced before for a long time, and which we now ſtood much in need of.

The next morning (June 3d), about ſix, ſoon after we had anchored, a large canoe, entirely laden with freſh ſalmon, came along-ſide; the whole cargo was ſoon bought, and at a very moderate price, for half a ſalmon might be purchaſed for a nail or button. We alſo bought a baſket full of ſmall red berries reſembling currants, which made moſt excellent pies. We now for the firſt time obſerved, that ſome of the Americans made uſe of double paddles, like thoſe of the Eſquimaux. At eleven we got up our anchors and made ſail, but the wind, which had now ſhifted to the ſouthward, impeded us in our progreſs greatly. About three the Diſcovery was near being aground, having ſhoaled her water all at once from ſeventeen to five fathoms, but with the aſſiſtance of her ſmall cutter ſhe was towed into deeper water.

We now went on, anchoring and weighing alternately every ſix hours, and the nearer we approached the ſea, the leſs we were affected by the tide. On the 5th, about eleven in the morning, being near the ſpot where the Reſolution loſt her anchor and cable, ſhe got out two of her boats, and endeavoured to recover them by ſweeping, but they failed in their attempts, and were obliged to leave both behind. In the afternoon we obſerved a ſmoke upon the top of a high mountain, which with the aſſiſtance of our glaſſes, we plainly ſaw iſſued out of a ſmall fiſſure or opening near its ſummit. At half paſt ſeven we anchored, when Mount St. Auguſtine bore S. 60 deg. W. the volcano, N. 65 deg. W. and the extremes of the rocky iſles (which we paſſed in coming up, and which captain Cook denominated, Barren Iſles, from their deſolate appearance) S. 9 deg. E. to S. 30 deg. E. our diſtance from the eaſtern ſhore being ſeven miles. At twelve we weighed for the laſt time in the river, and made ſail with a fine breeze from the W. S. W. our courſe being near S. S. E. and S. E.

At four the next morning (June 6th), Mount St. Auguſtine bore S. 78 deg. W. the volcano N. 34 deg. W. and the weſtern part of the Barren Iſles ſouth, our diſtance off ſhore being about three leagues. At noon, our latitude was 58 deg. 38 min. N. and we ſaw many whales about, one of which had its head almoſt covered with barnacles. About eight in the evening, during a calm interval, one of the Diſcovery's people ſaw a large fiſh ſwimming near the ſhip's head; he directly got a hook and line, and ſoon after caught it; whilſt he was hauling it up the ſhip's ſide ſeveral others made their appearance,

pearance, which were no ſooner ſeen than almoſt every perſon on board prepared their hooks and lines, and in the ſpace of a quarter of an hour, thirteen were taken, and many more made their eſcape. They were of the halibut kind, and ſome of them were above four feet in length and weighed ſixty pounds.

This fortunate capture furniſhed us with another treat, and raiſed the ſpirits of every one on board. The Reſolution was rather more lucky than the Diſcovery.

The next day (June 7th), the weather became thick and hazy, with light airs and calms; which rendered our ſituation irkſome and diſagreeable, as we were exceeding anxious to purſue our courſe with all expedition, as the ſeaſon advanced very faſt, and we had an immenſe track of land to explore. We ſaw many birds to-day, ſuch as puffins, guillemots, and petrels.

Our weather on the 8th was cloudy, with a breeze from the S. S. E. our courſe E. At noon we tacked, and ſtood to the S. W. our latitude being 57 deg. 54 min, N. a high black hill which appeared to be an iſle, then bore S. 71 deg. W. and the ſouthermoſt land in ſight, S. 25 deg. W.

The 9th was thick and hazy, with ſmall drizzling rain, and the wind ſtill kept in its old quarter. At half paſt five we tacked ſhip, being very near the land, which the hazineſs of the weather prevented our ſeeing before; the extremes of it then bore N. by W. and W. S. W. our diſtance from a rocky point about two miles.

The 10th and 11th were thick and hazy, which rendered exploring a tedious buſineſs, and the wind ſtill continued unfavourable. Our ſoundings theſe two days were from thirty to fifty-five fathom, with a coarſe, black, ſandy bottom.

We ſaw ſeveral flocks of ducks, and ſome curlews; an indication that we were not far from land. At five in the afternoon the fog became ſo thick that the ſhips loſt ſight of each other, but as they fired guns as ſignals to each other, they were fortunate enough not to part company. At ten, the fog clearing away to the weſtward, we ſaw the land bearing W. by S.

The 12th and 13th were ſpent in working to windward; our latitude on the latter day was 56 deg. 49 min. N. The ſouthermoſt land made in a gentle decline for a conſiderable way, the northern on the contrary was very high, forming hills and mountains, but with very little ſnow even upon the higheſt; the whole preſented a moſt barren appearance without the leaſt verdure. In the afternoon we ſaw ſome iſlands laying off to the eaſtward.

On the 14th we had open cloudy weather, with moderate breezes from the S. W. our courſe being S. S. E. At three in the morning, our ſoundings were ſeventy-five fathom. At half paſt nine, we were running along the eaſtern ſide of the iſlands mentioned yeſterday as laying to the eaſtward, at the diſtance of about two miles. They appeared to be a maſs of ſolid rock, cruſted over in a few places with moſs, which was the only produce of them. Our latitude at noon was 56 deg. 23 min. N. when the extremes of the iſlands bore S. 86 deg W. and N. 43 deg. W. diſtant about three leagues. At eight it became hazy, and we had a great number of ſeals, whales, and birds about, and at ten the wind ſhifted to S. E. by E. our courſe being W. by S.

The next day (June 15th), we had fine ſteady gales from the E. and E. S. E. with cloudy weather; we made all the advantage we could of this favourable change, and ſet every ſail the ſhips could carry. About noon it became very thick and hazy, with a ſmall continued rain. At half paſt two we ſaw the land bearing

N. W. by W. about thre leagues diſtant, and at three we hauled our wind, keeping a ſoutherly courſe. We had a very irregular ſea going, and at eight ſcarce any wind. At nine it began to clear up, when we ſaw a high bluff iſland bearing W. S. W. and more land to the weſtward, which appeared to be part of the continent: the former Captain Cook called Foggy Iſland, the latter Foggy Cape; our ſoundings then were ſeventy-two fathom, with a bottom of ſand and mud. At twelve we wore ſhip.

Our courſe the next day was S. S. W. with a fine breeze from the W. N. W. At two in the morning our ſoundings were forty-five fathom, and at three we ſaw land bearing S. E. by E. $\frac{1}{4}$ E. At four Foggy Iſland bore S. W. $\frac{3}{4}$ W. The land in this part was very irregular, and made in many broken points, ſome high and others low, with a good deal of ſnow upon various parts of it. There were ſeveral ſmall iſlands of various ſhapes and ſizes at ſome diſtance from it, one of which was ſomething like a church with two ſpires, and was called Pinnacle Point. At eight this point bore N. 67 deg. W. The weather was ſo hazy at noon that we could get no obſervation; our ſoundings were ſixty-five fathoms, At three it became almoſt calm, and at four the extremes of the land bore N. 11 deg. W. and S. 71 deg. W. At eight Pinnacle Point bore N. 28 deg. W. our diſtance from the ſhore about ſix leagues.

June 17th, we had light airs and fine weather. At four the extremes of the land bore N. 3 deg. W. and S. 64 deg. W. and at eight we ſaw more land to the ſouthward, bearing S. 23 deg. W. At noon our latitude was 55 deg. 30 min. N. and longitude 201 deg. 9 min. E. We ſaw many ſmall iſles in various parts, and in the afternoon obſerved innumerable flocks of birds of the diver kind, and many whales.

The whole of the next day was pleaſant, with calm weather till towards the evening, when a little breeze ſprung up from the E. S. E. which on the 19th increaſed to a fine gale, our courſe being W. S. W. At four in the morning a cluſter of iſles, which in the Ruſſian voyages are called Schumagin's Iſles, bore S. 47 deg. W. and the weſt point of the main S. 77 deg. W. our diſtance off ſhore being about five leagues. Theſe iſles were in fact nothing but huge rocks, without the leaſt appearance of verdure, and afforded a fine retreat for the water fowl: the main was almoſt entirely covered with ſnow. At noon our latitude was 55 deg. 17 min. N. when the weſt part of a paſſage, formed by Schumagin's Iſles, and the main bore from S. 21 deg. W. to S. 46 deg. ½ W. Notwithſtanding the barren appearance of the land, we found that it was inhabited; and ſix or ſeven of the Americans came off to us in their ſmall ſkin canoes. One of them tied a ſmall piece of wood to a rope which had been thrown over to them by ſome of the Diſcovery's people and made ſigns for them to haul it up, at the ſame time repeating the word Callikaah, which word, in their language, we afterwards found, ſignified writing. Upon examination, they found it was in two pieces, and tied together; they opened it, and found a note incloſed, wrote in the Ruſſian language, but not a ſoul on board underſtood a ſyllable of it.

Captain Clerke, who, as well as many others, at firſt ſuppoſed that ſome Ruſſians had been caſt away there, ordered three guns to be fired as a ſignal to the Reſolution, (who was a-head) to bring-to. She immediately ſent a boat on board, and Captain Clerke waited upon Captain Cook with the note, and a conſultation was held, when they agreed that it could be nothing more than a kind of certificate left by ſome Ruſſian traders, who had been there, which we afterwards found to be the caſe. Some of them ſhewed ſome fine pieces of freſh ſalmon, as an inducement to us to ſtop, but we were too much in a hurry to pay any attention to thoſe things; and having made ſail we purſued our courſe, as the wind was favourable, and we were anxious to get on.

At half paſt ſeven, we had thirty fathom with a gravelly bottom, and at eight the weſtermoſt land in ſight, appearing like an iſle, bore S. 70 deg. W. our diſtance off ſhore being about three leagues.

The next day (June 20th), we had light breezes and fine weather; at half paſt three in the morning, we ſaw breakers bearing N. 68 deg W. two miles diſtant, and at four a very high mountain bore N. 50 deg. W. off ſhore about three or four leagues. At five we ſaw rocks above water, a-breaſt of the Reſolution, who directly hauled off, and at eight we ſaw more rocks and breakers a-head, which induced Captain Cook to haul farther off. This part we called Rocks Point. At noon our obſerved latitude was 54 deg. 44 min. N. The land now appeared to trend quite away to the weſtward: in the evening we ſaw many whales, and had a ſwell from the E. S. E.

On June 21ſt, we had fine weather and calms. At eight the high mountain bore N. 12 deg. W. and at ten our ſoundings were thirty-five fathom, the bottom ſand and ſmall ſtones. At noon our latitude was 54 deg. 17 min. N. when the high mountain bore N. 5 deg. W. and the weſtermoſt of two other very high-peaked mountains, which proved to be a volcano, N. 81 deg. W. During the afternoon we caught a vaſt number of halibuts, ſome of which meaſured five feet ten inches in length, and weighed upwards of one hundred and twenty pounds.

The next day was rather hazy and foggy, with light airs and calms, till towards noon, when it cleared up a little, and we ſaw the volcano bearing N. 52 deg. W. our latitude being 53 deg. 51 min. N. In the evening it became hazy and rainy, and the wind ſhifted to the ſouth-eaſtward.

The 23d was much the ſame as the preceding day with reſpect to weather, and we ſaw nothing of the land till four in the afternoon, when it bore W. by N. diſtant about ſix leagues, and at ſix the high mountain (not the volcano) N. 75. deg. W. twelve leagues diſtant.

The weather on the 24th was thick and cloudy, and we had freſh breezes from the weſtward. At ten we tacked ſhip, and ſtood to the ſouthward, with the wind at W. S. W. We ſaw innumerable flocks of birds paſſing by from the ſouthward to the northward, and at noon the extremes of the main bore N. N. E. and N. W. by N. diſtant eight leagues. At two in the afternoon we ſounded, and got ground at fifty-three fathom, with a black ſandy bottom, and at four tacked and ſtood to the W. N. W. the wind being S. W.

We had a fine little breeze from the eaſtward the next day, and we altered our courſe to W. S. W. At eight the volcano bore N. 9 deg. E. and at ten we ſaw more land to the W. N. W. and hauled our wind. We ſaw a great number of birds and whales. At half paſt eight in the evening, we ſaw more land to the W. S. W. appearing as two iſlands, the ſouthermoſt the higheſt; and at eleven, the weather becoming foggy, we hauled off ſhore, our courſe being S. E. ½ E. with with the wind at N. E. by E.

At half paſt one the next morning (June 26th) we bore away, our courſe being W. S. W. the wind E. by S. At half paſt four, as we were running on, the weather being very thick and foggy, the Reſolution hailed the Diſcovery, and deſired her to come-to immediately, as there was a noiſe at no great diſtance from us, which exactly reſembling the ſurf breaking upon the ſhore. Both ſhips very ſoon after let go their anchors, and in the courſe of a few minutes the fogg cleared away, and we found, to our creat ſurprize, that we were in the mouth of a ſmall bay, not above a mile from ſhore, and ſurrounded in various directions by ſmall iſlands and rocks. That our ſituation may be the better aſcertained, it may not be amiſs to give the bearings and diſtances of the various rocks, &c. the extremes of the land off which we lay, bore N. and S. 5. deg. E. An iſland lying off the northern part of it, N. ¼ W. a ſandy bay, S. W. diſtant one mile; a high rock S. E. by S. one mile diſtant, and other rocks, above water, E. ¾ N. diſtant a mile and half. This was a moſt providential eſcape; if we had ſtood on five minutes longer, we muſt in all probability have been on ſhore, or if we had varied our courſe either to the right or left, we ſhould have run the riſk of being upon the rocks.

The land, which proved to be an iſland, had a very rocky appearance in almoſt every part, except the bay off which we had anchored, which was covered with verdure. There was but little ſnow except upon the tops of the higheſt hills, the other parts being free from it. About nine captain Clerke ſent his jolly-boat to cut graſs for the goats, as they were much in want of freſh food; ſhe returned at four in the afternoon with a good ſtock. The men who went in her had ſeen the remains of an old hut, and ſome pieces of drift wood, which had apparently been lately chopped, or cut with tools of the hatchet kind. They had alſo ſeen ſeveral eagles, and two or three ſmaller birds, one of the neſts of which they had found, with ſix eggs in it, and had brought it on board. The weather throughout the day was very foggy, with a wet haze. Captain Cook called this bay Providence Bay, and the eaſtern extreme of it Cape Providence.

CHAP. XVII.

Tranſactions and occurrences at the iſland of Unalaſchka—we depart from thence, and continue to trace the coaſt.

AT half paſt ſix the next morning (June 27), we weighed and made ſail, and at eight were ſtanding between the north point of the bay and a ſmall iſland to the northward of it, which together formed a channel about two miles wide: our ſoundings were from twenty-five to thirty fathom. At nine, having but little wind, and the tide carrying us in ſhore, we dropped our anchors again, in thirty-eight fathom, ſand and ſhells.

Soon after, boats were ſent from both ſhips to cut graſs, which returned at twelve. The productions of this part of the iſland were much the ſame as the laſt; amongſt other things, two ſpecies of willow were found, but they were only twelve or fourteen inches high: the ſoil was of a light, loamy nature, except in the marſhes, where it was black and rich. Our people ſaw a hut on ſhore, which, from its ſtructure, was evidently a temporary one; it was compoſed of pieces of drift-wood, the ends of which were tied or faſtened together, and afforded but indifferent ſhelter; it ſtunk abominably, and, from the fiſh bones and ſea eggs, which were quite freſh, it was apparent that people had been there very lately.

At one in the afternoon, we weighed and made ſail, ſhaping our courſe for a paſſage, which, when at anchor, bore N. W. by W. ½ W. As we were ſtanding acroſs a very deep bay, we obſerved a number of people in canoes, very buſily employed in towing a whale on ſhore, which they probably had juſt killed. When they ſaw us, ſome of them immediately made for the ſhips, and appeared glad to ſee us. They were much like thoſe of Sandwich Sound, but had a kind of bonnet upon their heads, very different from thoſe people: their canoes were nearly the ſame, and they all uſed double paddles; their under-lips had a round perforation, but we ſaw no ornaments in them; one of them had ſome blue beads on his bonnet. We purchaſed ſome of their darts, which were about four feet long, not feathered at the end, and pointed with a long piece of bone, which was barbed; ſome were pointed with ſtone, and one or two had four prongs. In return for theſe we gave them beads, which they appeared fond of, and after ſtaying ſome time with us, departed.

At ſix our ſoundings were twenty-ſeven fathoms, ſhelly bottom, and at eight we anchored in thirty-eight fathom, ſand and ſhells: the extremes of the paſſage we were ſtanding for, bore N. 45 deg. W. and N. 62 deg. W. our diſtance from the neareſt ſhore being about three miles.

The next morning we had light winds, and the weather was inclinable to be thick and foggy. At three, we weighed and made ſail. At five, having got to the mouth of the paſſage, the ebb-tide from the weſtward was ſo ſtrong as to ſet us back faſter than we got there. At ſix we intended to anchor, but the bottom proved rocky, and ſoon after the ſhips were ſet in a ſtrong race, occaſioned by the meeting of the tides round the different points of the ſurrounding iſles. At nine we anchored, the paſſage bearing N. 79 deg. W. At noon, the Reſolution weighed, made ſail, and got out her boats to tow her into a fine harbour, which ſhe lay at ſome little diſtance from. The Diſcovery was then three or four miles diſtant, but ſoon after ſhe alſo weighed, and, having the advantage of a little breeze, with the aſſiſtance of her boats, got into the harbour, and both ſhips anchored about ſix.

We had many of the natives with us during the day, who were not ſo much ſurpriſed at ſeeing a ſhip as might have been expected. It is plain they took us for Ruſſians, from their frequent repetition of the word *Rooſky*: they alſo perfectly underſtood the uſe of tobacco, which they aſked for by that name; and when it was given them, immediately put it in their mouths; ſome likewiſe made ſigns of taking ſnuff.— From all theſe circumſtances, we concluded that they muſt have frequent intercourſe with the Ruſſians.

Early the next morning, all hands were called, the empty caſks got out of the hold, the boats hoiſted out, and a large party of men ſent on ſhore to water; another party was diſpatched to cut graſs, while thoſe remaining on board were preparing for the reception of the water. We purchaſed to-day ſeveral darts, and other articles of curioſity, of the natives, who were a very well behaved people: we gave them ſnuff, tobacco, beads, and nails in return. We ſaw neither bows nor arrows amongſt them, and we obſerved that ſome had two, others three holes in their underlip, and not a continued one as at Sandwich Sound. Theſe people generally brought with them a vegetable, ſomething reſembling celery, which they eat a good deal of: this ſeems to be nearly the ſame plant as the morkovai of the Kamptſchadales, who are likewiſe fond of it.

At ſeven in the evening, having completed our water, and got a good ſtock of graſs, we made ready for ſea.

The next morning (June 30th), the Reſolution got up her anchor and made ſail, but wind and tide being both againſt her, ſhe was obliged to come-to again. Soon after, captain Cook ſent two of his boats on board the Diſcovery, to aſſiſt her in carrying out hawſers, for the purpoſe of warping out, and informed captain Clerke that he intended to do the ſame. All hands were now employed; but the weather ſhortly after became thick, and the ſhips making but little progreſs, we anchored again at noon, and captain Cook ſignified his intention of continuing here till to-morrow.

In the afternoon, all the people that could be ſpared, were permitted to go on ſhore and gather herbs, or amuſe themſelves in any other manner they thought proper; and ſome of the gentlemen having been informed that there was a ſmall Indian village near the entrance of the harbour, on the eaſtern ſhore, took this opportunity of walking there. The hills over which they were obliged to paſs, were high, but not very difficult to climb, on account of the length of graſs, which prevented their feet from ſlipping; there were many ſmall ponds of water upon the top, occaſioned probably by the melting of the ſnow, very little of which was now to be ſeen.

Upon their arrival at the village, they were very civilly received by the inhabitants, who pulled off their bonnets, and made very low bows: there were not more than eighteen or twenty, including women and children. The town conſiſted of eight or ten houſes, one of which was large, the others much ſmaller; the largeſt was about thirty feet in length, and eighteen feet wide, raiſed nearly ſix feet above the ſurface, and hollowed the ſame depth below it: there were two openings on the top, one, which was in the middle, for the admiſſion of light, the other as an entrance to the houſe, which was effected by means of a long poſt, with notches cut in it for the reception of the feet in deſcending: the bottom was lined with dry graſs, and the roof ſupported by ſtakes ſet upright, acroſs which were placed balks, and over the whole was thrown dry graſs and earth, which gave it the appearance at a diſtance of a large hillock: it was divided into partitions, in each of which the ſeveral families ſleep: the ſmell which iſſued from it was very ſtrong and diſagreeable. At ſome diſtance from the houſes, were erected ſtages for the purpoſe of drying fiſh, upon which were hung large pieces of halibut and whale's fleſh, and in ſeveral places were great numbers of the ſhells of ſea eggs, which appear to make no ſmall part of their food. There were only two women, one very old and grey-headed, the other who appeared to be about twenty, had a child in her arms; ſhe was dreſſed in a ſeal ſkin jacket, and her cheeks were marked or tatowed in a particular manner; ſhe had an ornament in her under lip made of bone, and was, to all appearance, tolerably neat and clean. The men were clothed in bird-ſkin jackets, the feathered ſide inwards, and none were ſeen with the bladder jacket on, which ſeems to be uſed only when they are going upon the water. —After having looked about as much as they thought neceſſary, the gentlemen returned, the natives bowing very reſpectfully at their departure, which was a piece of good manners they could not help returning.

The weather the next morning (July 1ſt), was fine and pleaſant, and the ſhips again endeavoured to get out, but found it impracticable, on account of the wind and tide. The men from both ſhips were permitted to go on ſhore as yeſterday, and ſeveral ſhooting parties went out: ſome of them brought on board a brace of fine grouſe, and three or four birds of the ſnipe kind; and one of the gentlemen caught a young fox, which he brought off with him, and kept ſeveral days on board, but, by ſome means or other, he broke his chain, and moſt likely went overboard, for we ſaw nothing of him afterwards.

At ſix the next morning, taking the advantage of a fine breeze from the S. E. we weighed and made ſail, ſtanding through the opening mentioned on the 27th inſtant, our courſe being N. W. by N. At noon our latitude was 54 deg. 19 min. N. At four in the afternoon, our courſe was N. the wind being E. N. E. and at ten, we ſteered N. E. the wind being S. E. by E.

The next day (July 3d), was cloudy, with a freſh gale from the ſouth-eaſtward. At half paſt ſix in the morning, we ſaw land, bearing E. S. E. our courſe being N. E. by E. At noon, it became more moderate, when the land bore from S. ½ E. to N. E. by E. our diſtance off ſhore about five leagues, our latitude being 55 deg. 30 min. N. At ſix in the evening, we ſaw high land, appearing like an iſland bearing E. ½ N. our ſoundings then were forty-eight fathom, with a fine ſandy bottom, and we had light airs and calms, and ſaw ſeveral whales.

July the 4th, was thick and cloudy, inclinable to fogs, with light airs and calms, and a ſwell from the W. S. W. At eight, the extremes of the land bore S. ½ E. and E. N. E. the neareſt part being about ſeven leagues diſtant. At half-paſt nine, the weather being very thick and foggy, we hauled off ſhore, our courſe being N. N. E. and our ſoundings thirty fathom. At eleven, it became calm, and both ſhips brought-to, main-top-ſail to the maſt, and our hooks and lines were put overboard: in the ſpace of half an hour, we caught ſeveral fine cod. At noon, we had a breeze from the eaſtward, when we made ſail, and ſtood to the northward. We ſaw ſeveral albatroſſes and ſome divers about, and a few puffins. In the afternoon, we had hazy weather, with a light drizzling rain.

The next day was heavy, cloudy, and diſagreeable, with a breeze from the E. S. E. our courſe N. E. At five, we ſaw the land, bearing E. N. E. At ſeven, we had ground at thirty-eight fathom, and at noon our latitude was 56 deg. 30 min. N. when the north part of the land in ſight bore N. 70 deg. E. and the neareſt part E. S. E. four leagues diſtant. In the afternoon, we caught more cod, and at four the extremes of the land bore S. E. and E. N. E. off ſhore about ſix leagues, our ſoundings being thirty-ſix fathom, with a bottom of fine black ſand. At eight, it became thick and foggy.

The next morning (July 6th), we had light breezes from the N. E. with open, cloudy weather, our courſe being N. N. W. At four, the extremes of the land bore E. and E. S. E. At nine, Captain Cook ſent an order to Captain Clerke to put the ſhip's company to two-thirds allowance of beef, pork, bread, and flour, as we were now in a latitude where fiſh were very plentiful, and he thought it prudent to reſerve as much of the ſhip's proviſions as he could with propriety, leſt it might be wanted in future upon more preſſing occaſions: in conſequence of this order, hooks and lines were diſtributed to the ſhips companies. At noon, our latitude was 56 deg. 54 min. N. and longitude 199 deg. 12 min. E. when the land bore from E. to E. N. E. nine leagues diſtant. As we ſtood on, we paſſed a ſeal ſleeping upon the ſurface of the water. At eight, our ſoundings were thirty-one fathom, the bottom black ſand, when the extremes of the land bore S. 21 deg. E. and N. 56 deg. E.; a deep bay, which Captain Cook called Briſtol Bay, S. 60 deg. E. our diſtance from the neareſt part being about ſix leagues. At half paſt eight, tacked ſhip and ſtood to the N. N. W. with the wind at N. E.

The 7th, was calm the beſt part of the day, with fine and pleaſant weather. At eight, the land bore from N. E. by E. to S. E. by E. and ſoon after both ſhips brought to, and all hands employed themſelves in fiſhing, when they met with all the ſucceſs they could poſſibly wiſh for.

About noon, a breeze ſprung up from the N. E.; ſo made ſail and ſtood E. S. E. In the afternoon, we ſaw a flock of ducks, ſeveral ſmall birds of the ſnipe kind, and a few brown ſheerwaters and gulls. At half-paſt eleven at night, we ſhortened ſail and tacked, our courſe being S. the wind E. S. E.; and at twelve, having ſeventeen fathoms, we brought to, main-topſail to the maſt, about four leagues diſtant from the ſhore.

At one the next morning July 8th), wore ſhip and made ſail, ſtanding to the northward, the wind at S E. though very light. At four, it became calm, and having a good depth of water for fiſhing, we put our hooks and lines over, and caught plenty of fine cod. At half paſt ten, a light breeze ſprung up from the N. E. our courſe N. N. W. At noon, the extremes of the land bore N. 59 deg. E. and S. S. E. diſtant from the neareſt part about five leagues, our latitude being 57 deg. 17 min N. At four, the land bore from S. E. to S. S. E. and at eight our ſoundings were twenty-ſix fathom, a black ſandy bottom. At ten, both veſſels tacked.

The next morning at two, we had light breezes, and at ſix ſaw a low point of land bearing N. E. our courſe being N. E. by N. with the wind at W. N. W. At eight, the Reſolution being nearly a league a-head of the Diſcovery, fired a gun, as a ſignal to make more ſail, the wind now freſhening up. At ten, we altered our courſe to N. by E. The land now trended away to the eaſtward, and had in many places a remarkable appearance, reſembling large broken columns or pillars; the high land was very ſnowy. At noon, our latitude was 57 deg. 47 min. N. and at one, we ſaw more land bearing N. by E. At two, we had thirteen fathom, with a rocky bottom. At ſix, our ſoundings were from thirteen to ten fathom, and at nine tacked and ſtood to the S. W. the wind W. N. W.

At two the next morning (July 10th), we ſaw a point of the low land mentioned yeſterday morning, extending as far as W. N. W. which effectually put a ſtop to our farther progreſs to the northward on this part of the coaſt: at three, therefore, Captain Cook hailed the Diſcovery, and ordered her to go a-head, keeping a S. W. courſe, and to be particular in her ſoundings.

ings. The weather was clear and pleaſant, with an eaſterly breeze. At a quarter paſt eleven, ſhe ſhoaled her water from fifteen to five fathom, and obſerving patches of white or ſhoal water in many places around us, fired a gun, as a ſignal to the Reſolution, and wore round, her courſe being N. E. The ſoundings now gradually increaſed to twelve fathom; and the ſhips being pretty near each other, Captain Cook ordered the Diſcovery to keep ſtill a-head, but to go upon the other tack after dinner, and to hoiſt out her boats and ſend them a-head to ſound. At noon, our latitude was 58 deg. 15 min N.; and at one, it being calm, and a tide ſetting us conſiderably to leeward, the Reſolution hoiſted the ſignal for anchoring, and ſoon after both ſhips came-to; we found the tide ſetting to the ſouthward. At four, we weighed and made ſail, our courſe ſoutherly, and ſoundings from twelve to five fathom. At half paſt ſeven, we let go our anchors again, and it became very hazy; no part of the land could be ſeen except a high round hummock on the N. W. ſhore, which bore N. 77 deg. W. and a mountain on the S. E. ſhore, bearing S. 38 deg. E.

At half paſt one the next morning (July 11th), we weighed and made ſail, our courſe W. by N. the wind S. W. by S. At four, we tacked and ſtood to the S. E. by S. our ſoundings being thirteen fathom. At ſix, it became thick and foggy, and at eight, finding it impoſſible to proceed any farther in ſuch thick weather, without running great riſks, both veſſels anchored. At one in the afternoon, the fog cleared up a little, when we weighed and ſtood S. S. E. and at half-paſt two, tacked and ſtood W. N. W. and W. by N. our ſoundings being from fifteen to twenty-two fathom. We ſaw ſeveral arctic gulls, and had a ſwell from the S. W. At half paſt ſix, we had ſome thunder and lightning, but both very inconſiderable, and at ſeven, ſaw high land bearing N. W. ½ W. At nine, the wind freſhened, and blew rather hard at times, till ten, when we were taken aback, and at eleven it became more moderate.

Our courſe the next day was N. W. the wind S. W. but ſo light as to carry us ſcarce a mile an hour; the weather clear and pleaſant. At ſix, we ſaw land bearing N. W. ½ W. and at noon the round hummock (which we now found to be an iſland, and which Captain Cook denominated Round Iſland), bore N. W. diſtant four leagues. At four, Round Iſland bore N. 45 deg. W. diſtant four leagues, and the weſtermoſt land in ſight N. 89 deg. W. At nine, being well in with the land, we tacked and ſtood to the northward, and at ten tacked again, our courſe S. W. the wind W. by N. and W. N. W.

At two the next morning (July 13th), our ſoundings were from eighteen to thirteen fathom; and at three, our courſe ſtill being nearly S. W. we ſhoaled from thirteen to ſeven fathom. At this time Round

Iſland bore N. 12 deg. W. four miles diſtant. We directly hauled off the land, keeping an E S. E. courſe, with our boats a-head ſounding, the Diſcovery, as drawing leaſt water, being ordered to take the lead. At ten, we reſumed our former courſe, our ſoundings varying from eight to twelve, and ſoon after to nine fathom, the bottom ſandy. At noon, our obſerved latitude was 58 deg. 15 min. N. when Round Iſland bore N. 25 deg. E. diſtant about ten leagues. The land here was very broken, having the appearance of iſlands, with here and there a patch of ſnow, but not a tree to be ſeen. At three in the afternoon, we had light airs, and at twelve it became calm, with hazy weather, the weſtermoſt land in ſight bearing W. N. W. ½ W.

In the morning, we had light airs and calms, with fine pleaſant weather. At ſix, our ſoundings were twenty-ſix fathom, and at eight Round Iſland bore N. 26 deg. E. Many of the ſeamen put over their hooks and lines, and caught a fine ſupply of cod, pollacks, ſmall halibut, and a ſpecies of flat fiſh reſembling a dab. About two in the afternoon, we ſaw two morſes, or ſea-horſes, aſleep in the water, and a boat from the Diſcovery with three or four people were ſent to attack them; but before they came near enough to do any execution, the animals diſappeared: theſe were the firſt we had ſeen.

At half-paſt four the next morning July 15th), it became exceeding thick and foggy, on which account we anchored. At ſeven, it cleared up in ſome degree, and we weighed our anchors, keeping nearly a weſt courſe. At noon our latitude was 58 deg. 21 min. N. when we ſaw the weſtern extreme bearing N. 61 deg. W. diſtant eight leagues. In the afternoon, we ſaw a ſea-bear: theſe animals are ſaid to be found no farther to the northward than latitude 56 deg. but this is a proof to the contrary. At eight, the fog again increaſed, and at ten we let go our anchors in ſeventeen fathom, a ſandy bottom. The ſhips rode with their heads W. by N. during the whole tide.

The fog clearing away about five (July 16th), we ſaw the land, the neareſt part bearing N. 18 deg. W. about five miles diſtant, which was much cloſer than we expected. We weighed ſoon after, our ſoundings being from ſixteen to twenty-one fathom. At nine Captain Cook ſent his large cutter on ſhore, with directions to the gentlemen who were in her to make what obſervations they could. At half paſt eleven, the tide began to make from the weſtward, on which account we anchored. We had ſeveral ſea-bears about the ſhips, one of which we ſhot at, but were not fortunate enough to kill him. Our latitude to-day was 58 deg. 36 min. N. At half paſt five, the tide from the eaſtward began to make, and at ſix we weighed, having very light airs. The boat returned at eight in the evening. The low land was covered with plants and flowers of various kinds, which afforded a moſt pleaſing appearance, and at the ſame time emitted a fragrance which was delightful, particularly the marſh ciſtus *(ledum paluſtre)*, which was in full flower. The hills were compoſed of maſſes of looſe ſtones, which rendered them very difficult to aſcend; ſome of the gentlemen however reached the top of one of the higheſt, upon which they buried a bottle containing a paper, upon which the names of the two ſhips were wrote, with that of their commanders, and the date of the year. The weather was very hazy, which greatly obſtructed their view. They ſaw a deer and fawn, ſeveral red foxes, and the tracts of bears. Upon the beach they found the putrified carcaſe of a ſea-horſe, out of the head of which they took the teeth. The rocks ſwarmed with ſhags and guillemots, moſt of which had young ones. Amongſt many plants and ſhrubs, were cran-berries, whortle-berries, monk's hood, geranium, the ſaranne (*lilium Kamtſchatcenſe*, Lin.) poppy, dock, violet, golden rod, and valerian. The ſoil was a kind of light ſand, with a ſmall mixture of clay, very ſtony, and not more than a foot deep,in ſome places not ſo much. This place was called Cape Newenham. At twelve, it became hazy, when Cape Newenham bore N. by W. diſtant ſix leagues.

What little wind we had the next day was E. N. E. our courſe N. W. the weather warm and pleaſant. At four in the morning, Cape Newenham bore N. 41 deg. E. our diſtance from the neareſt ſhore being about five leagues At noon our ſoundings were ſeventeen fathom, and we ſaw a few gulls, puffins, and guillemots about. At half paſt ten in the evening, having ſhoaled our water to ten fathoms, we tacked ſhip, and ſtood to the S. W.

The next day in the morning (July 18th), we had a fine little breeze from the S. E. our courſe N. N. W. At eight we ſhoaled from ſeventeen to ten, and from thence gradually to five fathoms, when we tacked and ſtood to the W. S. W. the wind being E. S. E. Cape Newenham then bore S. 42 deg. E. Boats from the Diſcovery were ordered to keep a-head and ſound. This was a continuation of the ſhoal we were running upon laſt night at half paſt ten. At ten we deepened our water, and ſoon after bore away; our courſe being N. N. E. the wind S. S. E. At noon our obſerved latitude was 59 deg. 23 min. N. Cape Newenham bearing S. 31 deg. E. diſtant fourteen or fifteen leagues. The ſoundings from the boats were from five to eight fathom; but at half paſt three they had only four fathom: we immediately hauled our wind, and ſtood to the N. W. and at five the Reſolution, who was a good way a-ſtern, made the ſignal for anchoring; ſoon after which both ſhips came-to in ſix fathom. When at anchor, a point of low land bore due N. diſtant two leagues, and Cape Newenham (at leaſt as much as we ſaw of it)

S. 24 deg. E. diſtant eighteen leagues. At ſeven in the evening the boats returned, with an account that to the weſtward there was a bank about two leagues from us, part of which was dry at low water; this bank was a continuation of the point of low land mentioned before as bearing due N. The tide by its ebb and flow had formed a kind of channel through it, whoſe depth was near five fathom. In the courſe of the night the Reſolution parted her cable.

Early the next morning, two Americans, in their canoes, were ſeen reconnoitring the ſhips at a diſtance; they ſtaid about a quarter of an hour, during which time they ſung a kind of ſong, and then departed. At eight captain Cook ſent for the Diſcovery's launch to aſſiſt the Reſolution's boats in recovering the anchor. They had nearly hoiſted it in laſt night by the buoy-rope, which unluckily broke, ſo that they had only their labour for their pains. However, at ſeven in the evening, they were fortunate enough to get the clinch of a hawſer over one of the flukes, by which means they ſecured it. The weather to-day was very warm, and the ſhips were peſtered with gnats, which found means to explore their way from the ſhore, and tormented us not a little.

At eight the next morning (July 20th), the Reſolution made a ſignal for the Diſcovery's large cutter to ſound to the S. W. At two in the afternoon ſhe returned with the diſagreeable news that the ſhoal extended a conſiderable diſtance to the weſtward; being ſurrounded in this manner, by the continent on one ſide, and this inſurmountable barrier on the other, we had nothing left but to return back, and proceed to the ſouthward, till we had entirely got out of its neighbourhood. And this was no eaſy taſk on account of the little depth of water in many places we had already paſſed, and by which we were obliged to return.

We weighed our anchors the next morning at three, and ſtood to the ſouthward, with the boats a-head ſounding. At half paſt ſix, one of them made the ſignal for ſhoal-water, and ſoon after all the reſt; we therefore came-to directly, and found a ſtrong tide running. A ſugar-loaf hill bore S. E. by E. and a part of the land making in a kind of a cape, N. E. This cape was denominated Shoal Neſs by captain Cook. At eight, a fleet of ſmall canoes, conſiſting of twenty-eight, made their appearance. At firſt they remained at a diſtance, but ſeveral of them at length ventured along-ſide. Some were clothed in garments made of ſkins of the ſpotted field mouſe, and had a kind of bonnet on their heads, ſomething like thoſe before mentioned, but without a hole through them for the reception of the head. Their hair was in general very ſhort, and ſome were ſhaved cloſe; they had a hole in one ſide of their under-lip, and beyond that another in the cheek, in both which they had ornaments. Their faces were not painted, but were very dirty, and the ſhape of it varied greatly; being long and thin in ſome, and round in others; upon the whole, they were a ſet of ill-looking people. Their canoes were covered with ſkin, like thoſe mentioned before, but they were wider, and the hole in which the perſon ſits was larger. They in general uſed ſingle paddles, but had double ones ſecured upon the outſide of their canoes; none had the bladder-dreſs. They did not appear to be much accuſtomed to ſhips, nor were they very honeſt, for they frequently made off with nails and other things that were handed down to them, as the price of their various articles of trade, without returning an equivalent. We purchaſed ſome of their bows and arrows, the points of which were compoſed of ſea-horſe teeth, and barbed, and ſeveral other things in the curioſity-way, alſo a few dried ſalmon. After about half an hour's ſtay they departed.

At eleven we got up our anchors and made ſail, with the boats a-head, who got from five to ten fathom, but very irregularly. At noon, our latitude was 59 deg. 25 min. N. when the ſugar-loaf hill bore S. 62 deg. E. diſtant eight leagues, and Shoal Neſs, N. N. E. ½ E. At three we let go our anchors, and at ſix weighed them again; our ſoundings from nine to fifteen fathoms. At nine we came-to for the night, when Cape Newenham bore S. S. E. ½ E. ten leagues diſtant.

CHAP. XVIII.

Tranſactious till our departure from the Tſchutſchi Noſs.

AT ſix the next morning (July 22d) we weighed and made ſail, our courſe ſtill being S. and S. by W. with a freſh breeze from the S. E. and E. S. E. our boats continuing a-head ſounding. At eight we had from thirteen to fifteen fathom, and Shoal Neſs bore N. 26 deg. E. At half paſt nine we ſhoaled to nine fathoms, when we tacked and ſtood to the E. N. E. the Reſolution's boats keeping a-head upon this tack, and the Diſcovery's upon the other. At eleven we anchored, the tide being againſt us; when the ſugar-loaf hill bore N. 6 deg. E. Shoal Neſs, N. 17. deg. E. twelve leagues diſtant, and the neareſt part of the ſhore about three leagues diſtant. Cape Newenham could not be diſtinguiſhed. We endeavoured this afternoon to catch ſome fiſh, but met with little ſucceſs, the water being too ſhallow. In the afternoon at five, we got up our anchors, and having made ſail, ſtood S. S. E. the wind being eaſt, and our ſoundings fifteen, thirteen, and fourteen fathom. At ſix we ſaw Cape Newenham bearing N. 40 deg. E. ſeven or eight leagues diſtant. At eight, having from ſixteen to twenty fathoms, we made the ſignal for the boats to come on board, and ſoon after hoiſted them in.

July 23d, at half paſt two in the morning we bore away, our courſe being S.S.W. with the wind E. by N. At four, the Reſolution made the ſignal for the Diſcovery to go a-head and ſound, and at five we ſhoaled from eighteen to ten fathom; we immediately hauled the wind, and ſtood S. S. E. This no doubt was a continuation of that extenſive ſhoal we were ſo near on the 20th. At ſix we had from nine to thirteen fathoms; and at two in the afternoon, having deepened them to twenty-three fathoms, we bore away to S. S. W. and at ſeven altered our courſe to W. S. W. We had many puffins, ſea parrots, guillemots, arctic, and other gulls, about us to-day.

The weather, which for theſe ſeveral days paſt, was fine and clear, now became thick and foggy. We however continued our W. S. W. courſe, till five in the afternoon (July 24th), having from twenty-ſeven to thirty-five fathoms, when we proceeded in a W. S. W. direction.

All the next day was thick and foggy, and we frequently loſt ſight of each other, but by conſtantly repeating the neceſſary ſignals, we were fortunate enough to keep together. Our courſe was ſtill W. S. W. but at nine it became ſo very thick as to render our proceeding any farther extremely dangerous; captain Cook therefore ordered the ſignal to be made for anchoring, and both ſhips came-to ſoon after, in thirty-two fathoms, with a bottom of coarſe ſand.

At ſeven the enſuing evening, the fog cleared up, and we got up our anchors, and ſtood to the N. N. W. the wind being N. E. and E. N. E. At half paſt nine we ſaw a whale, which was the firſt we had obſerved for near a fortnight, and ſome time after ſaw ſeveral others, and likewiſe a ſeal. We had no land in ſight to-day.

The following day (July 27th) was cloudy, with frequent thick fogs. Our courſe was W. by N. and W. N. W. with the wind at north. At one in the afternoon it ſhifted to N. E. by E. and at four to E. N. E. our courſe being N. and N. by W. At twelve we had twenty-ſix fathom, and ſoon after tacked ſhip, and ſtood to the eaſtward. The firſt part of the next morning was fine and clear, with a freſh breeze from the N. E. At three we tacked and ſtood N. W. by W. our ſoundings being twenty-ſix fathom. At eight it became very foggy, but of no long continuance, and at noon our obſerved latitude was 59 deg. 54 min. N. At two in the afternoon it again came on exceeding thick, with a ſtrong breeze from the N. N. E. which at three increaſed to a hard gale, which obliged us to take in our top-gallant-ſails, and reef the top-ſails. We continued ſtanding to the N. W. by W. and W. N. W. till twelve, when we tacked ſhip and ſtood to the eaſtward.

Our weather the next morning was dark, thick and cloudy, with ſmall rain, with the wind at N. but more moderate than yeſterday. At three we wore ſhip, and ſtood W. by N. At half paſt four we ſaw high land bearing W. by N. our ſoundings were thirty-eight fathom, with a gravelly bottom. At eight the land which now appeared to be an iſland, extended from W. ½ S. to W. N.W. diſtant about four leagues; the north point ended in a very high bluff-head, which, from its ſingular appearance, captain Cook called Point Upright. At eleven we were tolerably near the land, which made in high, ragged, perpendicular cliffs, the whole forming a kind of bay. We ſaw no trees, but it was covered in many parts with graſs, &c. with here and there a ſmall patch of ſnow. There were numberleſs flocks of guillemots, and auks; of the latter there were two ſpecies, one with an upright creſt upou its head, the other very ſmall; we alſo ſaw ſome few puffins and ſea-parrots. At half paſt eleven we tacked, our courſe E. N. E. but the wind was very light, and the ſmall rain continuing, rendered every thing about us very uncomfortable. Our latitude to day at noon, by an imperfect obſervation, was 60 deg. 22 min. N. when Point Upright bore N. 45 deg. W. At two in the afternoon, the fog which hung about the land began to diſperſe, and the clouds to ſeparate, but at three it again became very thick. At four, Point Upright bore N. 44 deg. W. and a ſmall high iſland laying off the weſtern extreme S. 73 deg. W. our diſtance off ſhore being two leagues. At half paſt ſix we tacked, and ſtood to the S. E. and at twelve it became calm.

The weather the next day (July 30th) was in general foggy, with ſhort intervals of clearneſs, and the winds light and variable. At five in the morning, we ſaw the weſtern extreme of the iſland bearing W. ½ S. We had many guillemots, puffins, and gulls about to-day, At four in the afternoon we wore ſhip and ſtood W.

N. W. the wind being N. by E. and N. E. by E. and at twelve we had moderate breezes from the S. S. E. and S. E.

July 31ſt, we had open cloudy weather, and were free from fogs. At eight we had a fine breeze from the S. E. our courſe being nearly N. E. throughout the day. We had no land in ſight, and our ſoundings were thirty-four fathoms, a ſoft muddy bottom. Our latitude at noon was 61 deg. 16 min. N. and at ſix in the afternoon, we paſſed a piece of drift wood.

The next day (Auguſt 1ſt), we had open cloudy weather. At four we paſſed the body of a large tree, and at ſix a good deal of drift-wood, moſt of which appeared to have been long in the water. At eight the wind ſhifted to E. N. E. and at nine to N. N. W. our courſe N. E. and ſoundings from twenty-four to twenty-one fathoms. We had many arctic gulls about. At half paſt eleven we had a ſtiff breeze from the N. by E. our courſe N. W. by W. and our latitude was 61 deg. 58 min. N. In the afternoon we paſſed more drift-wood, and a ſhag, apparently quite exhauſted with fatigue, pitched upon one of the Diſcovery's anchors. At eight we tacked ſhip, our courſe being E $\frac{1}{2}$ N. the wind N. by E.

The weather on the ſecond was thick, heavy, and rainy, with a warm diſagreeable atmoſphere, and a freſh breeze from the E. N. E. our courſe S. E. We paſſed much drift-wood, and at eight we had little winds and rain, with a heavy irregular ſea from the northward. Many gulls and large flocks of ſheer-waters about. At two in the afternoon it became calm, and our ſoundings were nineteen fathoms, with a fine ſandy bottom.

The following day we had open cloudy weather, with intervals of ſunſhine, and a ſlight breeze from the W. by N. our courſe N. by W. Our ſoundings were eighteen fathom, and at noon our latitude by ſome double altitudes was 62 deg. 33 min. N. In the afternoon we ſteered

N. N. E. the wind being E. S. E. and S. E. by E. At four, we had fourteen fathom, and at ſix they deepened to twenty. Soon after, we ſaw land bearing W. ½ N. diſtant about eight leagues. At eight, we had thirteen fathom, and the land bore S. 84 deg. W.

On the fourth, we had a ſtrong breeze from the E. by N. our courſe being N. N. E. At half paſt three in the morning, captain Cook hailed the Diſcovery, and ordered her to keep a-head, and ſound. At eight, we had thirteen fathom and a half, the bottom brown ſand and ſhells. At two in the afternoon, we ſaw land extending from N. to W. N. W. about ſix leagues diſtant. At three, we had ten fathom, and ſoon after hauled cloſe to the wind, having ſince one been about a point and half from the wind. As we proceeded, our ſoundings became irregular, from ten to ſeven fathom, and then deepening to thirteen. At four, the Diſcovery, ſeeing a kind of ripling a-head, which had rather rathen a ſuſpicious appearance, tacked, and the Reſolution ſoon after followed her example. At half paſt four, the Diſcovery came under the Reſolution's ſtern, as by ſignal, and at ſeven both veſſels let go their anchors, as it became very thick. When it cleared up, we ſaw a high bluff iſle, bearing W. by S. diſtant about three leagues.

The next day (Auguſt 5th) was foggy, with ſmall drizling rain. At four, we prepared for getting up our anchors, but as it ſoon after became very thick, we deſiſted. At nine, we weighed, and about ten, a boat was ſent on board the Diſcovery, with an account of the death of Mr. Anderſon, the ſurgeon, who had been in a declining ſtate for near a twelvemonth paſt: he was ſucceeded by Mr. Law, the ſurgeon of the Diſcovery. At noon, the extremes of the land, which proved to be the main, bore N. E. by E. and N. W. ½ W. At half paſt one, we anchored in eight fathom, about two miles diſtant from the iſland, the extremities of which bore S. and S. 36 deg. E. the land on the main to the weſtward was high, and bore N. 48 deg. W. and the eaſtermoſt land in ſight N. 58 deg. E. We found the tide ſetting ſtrong from the E. by S. Soon after we were anchored, captain Cook ſent boats from both ſhips to cut graſs for the ſtock, of which there appeared to be plenty, and which was a repaſt they ſtood much in need of: himſelf likewiſe, with ſome of his officers, went on ſhore to make what obſervations they could.

The iſland was very ſmall, but covered in almoſt every part with variety of herbage, amongſt which were many plants common in England, and two or three ſpecies of willows, but very diminutive, not being above eighteen inches in height. Berries (ſuch as cran-berries and whortle-berries) were remarkably plentiful, but their time was too ſhort to permit them to collect many. They aſcended

ſcended the hill, but the weather was very unfavourable for a great extent of viſion: they ſaw much land in different directions, and upon the beach found a ſledge, which induced captain Cook to call it Sledge Iſland.

At three the next morning, we weighed and made ſail, keeping a W. and W. S. W. courſe, with a light breeze from the ſouthward. At ſeven, we ſaw more land bearing N. W. and at eight, Sledge Iſland bore S. 72 deg. E. two leagues diſtant. At noon, our obſerved latitude was 64 deg. 40 min. N. and at one, we ſaw an iſland bearing N. 85 deg. W. ſeven leagues diſtant. At four, it was calm and foggy, when the extremes of the main bore E. and N. by E. At ſix, we had from ten to ſeven fathom, and at ſeven tacked and ſtood S. S. E. the wind being S. W. when we ſaw more land to the weſtward bearing N. W. ½ W. At eight, we anchored for the night, when Sledge Iſland bore S. 64 deg. E. the other iſland

S. 70 deg. W. ſix leagues diſtant, and the weſtern part of the main N. 52 deg. W. our diſtance off ſhore being about five miles.

In the morning (Auguſt 7th), we had cloudy weather, with light ſoutherly breezes. At eight, we weighed and made ſail, our courſe W. S. W. and W. At one in the afternoon, we tacked, and at eight the wind blew freſh from the N. by E. and N. E. our courſe being N. W. ½ N. and our ſoundings from twelve to fifteen fathom. The weſtermoſt land in ſight then bore N. 55 deg. W. our diſtance off ſhore about three leagues. At twelve we had hard rain, our ſoundings being eleven and twelve fathoms.

The next morning was thick and hazy, with light winds and hard rain. At three, having ſhoaled to nine fathom, we bore away, the wind S. by E. and S. our courſe N. E. and N. At four, we ſaw the land bearing N. W. by N. and ſoon after hauled up to E. S. E. At five having light winds, and drifting faſt on ſhore, we let go our anchors, when the extremes of the land bore N. 80 deg. W. and N. 48 deg. ½ E. the weſtern extreme making in a high peaked hill, our diſtance from ſhore two miles. At eight we took the advantage of a brezee which ſprung up, and weighed and made ſail. At ten, our ſounding being ſeven fathom, we tacked and bore away to the W. N. W. the wind being N. N. E. At noon, we had freſh breezes, and the extremes of the main bore N. 65 deg. W. and E. ¼ S. our ſoundings being from eight to thirteen fathoms. At four, we had rain, tacked and ſtood to the E. N. E. the wind N. and ſoon after ſaw a long neck of low land, running out from the northermoſt high land, bearing N. 2 deg. E. and a high ſteep rock S. 88 deg. W. We ſaw many objects upon the low land reſembling trees. At half paſt five, tacked ſhip and ſtood W. N. W. and at ſeven wore, our courſe E by N. the ſteep rock bearing S. W. At nine, we ſaw the point of low land a head, about three miles diſtant, and ſoon after ſhoaled our water to five fathom, when we tacked and ſtood to the weſtward, and ſoon after anchored.

Auguſt 9th. The next morning we had thick, cloudy, rainy weather, with ſqualls and hard gales from the N. by W. At eight we weighed and made ſail, and at nine wore ſhip and ſtood W. ½ N. At noon, our latitude was 65 deg. 45 min. N. when the high rock bore S. W. by S. and the iſland to the weſtward W. S. W. ½ W. At two in the afternoon, we bore away for the weſtern iſland, our courſe S. W. by W.; but, upon our nearer approach we found there were two inſtead of one. At four the extremes bore N. and W. by N. the eaſtermoſt about a mile diſtant. They were entirely compoſed of rugged pointed rocks from the bottom to the ſummit, and here and there we ſaw a ſmall patch of graſs. Captain

Cook named them the Iſles of Diſappointment. At ſeven we ſaw more land bearing W. by S and at eight the extremes of the land from S. W. ½ W. to N. W. and a bluff head forming the north point of a bay W. S. W. five or ſix leagues diſtant. At ten, we wore ſhip, our courſe being N. E. by N.

The next day was fine and clear, with moderate breezes from the N. W. At two, we wore ſhip and kept a W. ½ S. courſe. At four, we had freſh gales, and at five ſaw land bearing N. At eight, the land ſet at five bore N. 16 deg. E. and the ſouth point of a bay S. 85 deg. W. off ſhore two or three miles. The land formed a deep bay, and was moderately high, in ſome parts rocky, with a ſlope of low land, which ſeemed well covered with verdure. Upon one part of it we ſaw ſeveral houſes, about which were placed upright what appeared to be the jaw-bones of whales. By the aſſiſtance of our glaſſes, we diſcovered many inhabitants, who ſeemed to be running about in great confuſion, and ſome making off to the mountains. The ſouthermoſt part conſiſted of a double ridge of high mountains, the tops of which were covered with ſnow. At ten, we anchored in thirteen fathom, with a gravelly bottom, the two points of the bay bearing N. 16 deg. E. and S. 31 deg. W. the village N. 31 deg. W. and the iſles of Diſappointment N. E. ½ E.

Soon after we had anchored, the Reſolution's pinnace, in which was captain Cook, attended by the large cutters of both ſhips, all well manned and armed, proceeded to that part of the ſhore where the village was ſituated. As they approached they ſaw between fifty and ſixty people ſtanding upon an eminence near the houſes, as if prepared to defend themſelves againſt any attack that might be made.

Having reached the ſhore, three of them came down; but upon captain Cook's approach (who landed by himſelf), they retired; he however followed them, and, by every ſign of friendſhip, endeavoured to perſuade them to lay aſide their fears, and at the ſame time ſhewed them beads and various other articles. Theſe ſeemed to engage their attention, and at laſt one of them came near enough to the captain to receive a bunch of beads, which he carried to his two companions, and after ſome conference they collected courage, and readily joined him. The others, ſeeing the reception their comrades had met with, came down to meet them. Several of the officers who were in the boats now followed the captain; but the natives made ſigns that too many ſhould not come at once, and appeared very circumſpect and upon their guard, for, as the others approached, they retired, till having arrived at their houſes, they fixed a line made of the ſkin of the ſea-horſe, acroſs, and gave the gentlemen to underſtand they were not to go beyond it. Having ſettled matters thus far, they brought out various articles of trade, ſuch as ſea-horſe hides and teeth, ſeal ſkins, ropes made of hides, gloves, and half-boots, both curiouſly ornamented with embroidery. Many different things were purchaſed, and, having come to a good underſtanding, the rope was removed, and the captain, officers, &c. were permitted to take a nearer view of their houſes. Thoſe which were ſuppoſed to be their ſummer habitations, were nearly of a cylindrical form, covered with the ſkins of the morſe, or ſea-horſe, and propped up or ſupported by the bones of whales, as were likewiſe the roofs of their winter huts. The latter were about five or ſix feet below the ſurface of the earth, the bottoms covered with boards, and the tops, after being ſecured with the bones of whales, as mentioned before, were covered with dried graſs and earth, much like thoſe of the natives of Unalaſchka, but the entrance was at the front, and not on the top. In theſe were obſerved many ſledges, and various utenſils in the fiſhing way.

The men (for they ſaw neither women nor children) were ſtout and well made, and in general below the middle ſize, though three or four were near ſix feet high; their colour nearly bordering upon the copper, their faces broad, high cheek-bones, ſmall eyes, flat noſes, and thick lips: their teeth were bad, and appeared as if worn down to the ſtumps; they had no holes for the reception of ornaments either in the under-lip or cheek, but they had blue beads, and many others of different kinds, in their ears; their hair was very ſhort, and ſome were ſhaved cloſe; in general, they had but little beard. Their dreſs conſiſted of jackets with ſleeves, ſome made of dog-ſkins with the hair on, others with the ſkin tanned and dreſſed, and faſtened round the middle with a belt; their breeches, ſtockings, and ſhoes, were all of a piece, and made of the ſame materials as the jackets; their ſhoes were ornamented with embroidery, which does credit to their women, and ſhews great ingenuity and taſte. They were all armed with bows, quivers of arrows at their backs, and ſpears headed with iron exceeding ſharp and bright, and inlaid with white and yellow metal: their bows were by far the beſt we had ſeen, but they would not ſell one, nor would they truſt them out of their hands; their arrows were much like thoſe of America, but the ſharp end was compoſed of ſea-horſe tooth, and not barbed. They very readily ſhewed the goodneſs of their arms by ſhooting ſeveral arrows, which went to a great diſtance, and with amazing velocity. The perſon who appeared to be their chief, was quite an old man; he had a mark or line acroſs his noſe, and extending beyond his cheek-bones, at the termination of which were the forms of two fiſh: this had the exact appearance of tatowing, and in all probability was done in that manner, but it was the only inſtance ſeen. There were numbers of dogs, which they keep for the purpoſe of drawing their ſledges; they were much like thoſe of Kamtſchatka, and quite as large. Many of them had evidently been juſt killed, which induced the captain to ſuppoſe they were intended as ſacrifices to their gods, to inſure them ſucceſs and victory in caſe we attacked them. In various ſpots, at ſome little diſtance from their houſes, were piles of ſtones, in which were placed upright the ribs or jaw-bones of whales: the captain was very deſirous of knowing the uſe or intention of them, but could not learn.

The natives behaved with great civility, and the old chief made the captain a preſent of ſeveral fine trout, in return for ſome beads which he had received, and one of them brought a large piece of ſea-horſe fleſh, which he made ſigns was very good; but the gentlemen declined eating. They were likewiſe entertained with a dance; three of them ſung, at the ſame time ſtriking a kind of drum with a ſtick, while three others danced, putting themſelves in various poſtures, but keeping time to the ſtrokes of the drum. Several of their canoes were ſeen, which were nearly the ſame as the large open canoes of Sandwich Sound. The hills were compoſed of rocks and looſe ſtones, with very little verdure upon them; but the plains were extenſive and well clothed with plants and herbs, amongſt which were ſcurvy-graſs, colt's foot, cotton-graſs, and monk's hood: trees were quite out of the queſtion, not a twig being ſeen in any part.

Having made as many obſervations as the time would permit, the captain took his leave of them, and returned to the ſhip. At three in the afternoon, we weighed and made ſail, and ſtood to the northward, tracing this part of the coaſt, which proved to be the continent of Aſia, till five in the afternoon, when we bore away to N. E. by N. with the wind at S. S. W. There were many conjectures formed reſpecting this part we had juſt left, ſome ſuppoſing it to be part of Aſia, and others declaring in favour of its being part of the great iſland Alatſchka, ſo *curiouſly and accurately laid down* in a book intitled Ruſſian Diſcoveries in the Northern Archipelago, by a Mr. Stæhlin. Time however proved the former conjecture to be true, it being the Tſchutſchki Noſs, which, in the Ruſſian charts, is laid down ſeveral degrees farther to the northward.

CHAP. XIX.

Direct our courſe to the American ſhore—fall in with the ice—numerous herds of ſea-horſes, or morſe, upon it—ſee land, which captain Cook denominates Icy cape—trace the ice—diſcover the Aſiatic continent, which we continue to trace till we again arrive at the Tſchutſchi Noſs.

WE now proceeded in a N. E. by N. direction, for the coaſt of America. On the eleventh, at eight in the morning, the extremes of the iſles of Diſappointment bore from S. 9 deg. E. to S. 75 deg. E. and the north point of the bay we left S. 40 deg. W. our ſoundings being twenty-five fathom, broken ſhells and gravel, at noon, our obſerved latitude was 66 deg. 5 min. N. At four, in the afternoon, we ſhoaled our water to ten fathom, when we altered our courſe to E. N. E. the iſlands of Diſappointment bearing S. 26. deg. W. and S. 34 deg. W. and the extremes of land to the eaſtward N. 66 deg. E. and S. 20 deg. E. At five, our depth of water was only ſeven fathom, ſo hauled our wind, and, at half paſt five, we dropped our anchors, in ſix fathom, with a brown ſandy bottom, the eaſtern land bearing from N. 73 deg. E. to S. 8 ½ deg. E. and the iſles of Diſappointment S. 33 deg. W. and S. 39 deg. W. Soon after captain Cook diſpatched a boat to ſound to the N. E.; and, after a ſtay of about half an hour, ſhe returned, with an account of the water proving very ſhallow in that quarter; this determined him to weigh the firſt opportunity, becauſe, if blowing weather came on, the ſhips might drag their anchors, and by that means run into ſhoal water. At nine, we had a breeze from the northward, which both veſſels took the advantage of, and got up their anchors, ſtanding to the weſtward.

At four the next morning (Auguſt 12th), the weather was moderate and fine, our courſe W. N. W. with the wind at N. but at eight it became cloudy, the extremes of the eaſtern land (part of America) bearing S. 52 deg. E. and S. 36 deg. E. and the extremes of the land to the weſtward (part of Aſia) from S. 60 deg. W. to S. 49. deg. W. our ſoundings being twenty-nine fathom, ſandy bottom.

At noon, our obſerved latitude was 66 deg. 19 min. N. when a high peaked hill upon the American ſhore bore S. 44 deg. E. At eight in the evening, the peaked hill bore S. 34 deg. E. and the iſles of Diſappointment S. 8 deg. W. and S. 15 deg. W. diſtant about eight leagues. At twelve, we tacked and ſtood N. E. ½ N. the wind N. W. by N. We were obliged to tack frequently in the courſe of the day, on account of our irregular ſoundings.

The next day we had light airs and calms, with fair and pleaſant weather, and ſaw many arctic and other gulls about, with a few guillemots. At eight, the land to the weſtward, which was now almoſt out of ſight, bore S. 26 deg. W. diſtant twelve leagues, our ſoundings from twenty to thirteen fathoms. At noon, it became quite calm, when the weſtern land bore from S. 27 deg. W. to S. 34 deg. W. the peaked hill S. 29 deg. E. and the northermoſt part of the American continent S. 51 deg. E. At eight in the evening, we had a fine breeze from the S. E. our courſe being N. when the northern part of the eaſtern land bore S. 70 deg. E. diſtant twelve or fourteen leagues. At twelve, we had freſh breezes from the ſouthward, with cloudy weather, but no land in ſight.

At four in the morning (Auguſt 14th), we had freſh breezes from the S. E. with ſqually weather, our ſoundings twenty-two fathom. At nine, ſaw land, the extremes of which bore from N. 67 ½ deg. E. to N. 14 deg. W. and at ten, it became hazy, with ſmall drizzling rain. At noon, the breeze freſhened to a gale, the extremes of the land bearing N. E. ½ E. and E. We had many fulmars about, as well as gulls and guillemots. At two in the afternoon, we ſhoaled our water to thirteen fathom, ſo tacked and ſtood to the S. S. W. At four, wore ſhip, our courſe E. N. E. and at five bore away to W. the extremes of the land in ſight from E. by S. to N. W. by N. the neareſt part bearing N. about three leagues diſtant. At eight, our ſoundings were ſixteen fathom, and at twelve it was ſqually, with rain.

The next morning was cloudy, with ſmall rain, and ſtrong gales from the S. by W. attended with hard ſqualls, which, with a heavy ſea going, tumbled us about terribly. At ſix, we were obliged to take in all our ſails but the fore-ſail, main-top-ſail, and mizen-ſtay-ſail, and to get down top-gallant-yards. At eight, it became rather more moderate, and our ſoundings were twenty-three fathom, with a muddy bottom. At noon, our latitude was 68 deg. 20 min. N. when we altered our courſe to N. W. the wind being S. S. W. In the afternoon, the wind decreaſed greatly, and our ſoundings were twenty-ſix fathom. At twelve, we hauled our wind, our courſe being W. ½ S.

At one in the morning (Auguſt 16th), we bore away, our courſe N. N. W. the wind S. by W. but at four, as it became thick and foggy, we hauled our wind again. At ſeven, the fog clearing away, we purſued our former courſe. Several ſmall birds of the water-wagtail genus flew round the ſhips, and ſome perched upon the rigging. At four in the afternoon, our ſoundings were twenty-three fathom, and at eight twenty fathom, the bottom a ſoft mud.

The next day was foggy, with fine clear intervals of ſunſhine, our courſe N. N. E. At eight, our ſoundings were fourteen fathom; and we began to experience more cold than we had done before, the thermometer ſtanding at 35 deg. At ten, we had thirteen fathom, when we hauled our wind, keeping a N. W. courſe. At noon, our obſerved latitude was 70 deg. 32 min. N. and at one in the afternoon we deſcried a large field of ice, extending from N. N. E. to W. by N. and ſaw ſeveral morſes, or ſea-horſes, ſwimming about. At four, it coming on foggy, and being very near the ice, we tacked ſhip, our ſoundings twenty-three fathom. At half paſt five, we tacked and ſtood again to the N. W. but were ſoon after obliged to deſiſt, and purſue our former courſe, on account of the ice. We now ſaw from the maſt-head another large field of ice bearing S. W. We continued tacking in this manner till twelve, when, having only thirteen fathom, we proceeded in a W. N. W. direction. We purſued this courſe till four the next morning, at which time we tacked in twenty fathom. At ſix, we had a ſhower of ſleet, and at ſeven, having only twelve fathom, we again tacked and ſtood to the N. W. the wind being W. by S. and W. S. W. We were now in rather a diſagreeable ſituation, being unable to proceed to the eaſtward on account of the ſhoalneſs of water, and the wind not permitting us to weather the ice on the other tack; we beſides found a ſtrong current ſetting to the eaſtward. At eleven, we ſaw the ice again, diſtant about three miles, and at twelve were cloſe in with it: it appeared higher than that of yeſterday, and made in various odd forms, and was that kind of ice called packed ice. We ſoon after tacked, the thermometer ſtanding at 32½ deg. and our obſerved latitude was 70 deg. 43 min. N. We ſaw four or five arctic gulls and two whales. At half paſt five in the afternoon, we deſcried a low patch of barren land, almoſt incloſed with ice, extending from E. to S. E. by S. our diſtance from the neareſt part being about three miles, and our ſoundings thirteen fathom. Captain Cook called this Icy Cape. Our longitude to-day, at eight in the morning, was 198 deg. 34 min. E. At ſix, the Diſcovery, being to the eaſtward of her conſort, ſhoaled her water almoſt ſuddenly to ſix fathom and a quarter, when ſhe directly fired a gun and tacked, as did the Reſolution, whoſe depth of water was nine fathom. At ſeven our ſoundings varied from ſeven to thirteen fathoms, but very irregularly, and at eight they were from eight to ten fathoms. We found that the current had carried us ſeveral miles farther to the eaſtward than we were yeſterday. At half paſt eleven, we again tacked, ſtanding to the S. W. with the wind N. W.

The next day (Auguſt 19th) the weather was very variable; ſometimes the ſky was totally obſcured by ſhowers of ſleet and ſnow, and at other times ſcarce a cloud was to be ſeen. At eight in the morning, we tacked and ſtood to the N. W. with the wind W. S. W. our ſoundings being thirteen fathom. At eleven, paſſed many pieces of looſe ice, and at twelve ſaw more ice a-head, our obſerved latitude being 70 deg. 8 min. N. At two, we tacked and ſtood to the ſouthward, and ſoon after, obſerving many herds of morſes ſleeping upon the ice, captain Cook ordered out boats to attack and kill ſome. In the courſe of the afternoon, the Reſolution's people killed nine, and the Diſcovery's four. As ſoon as they were brought on board, the ſeamen began to cut them up, and, a freſh meal being in our preſent ſituation a very deſirable object, ſeveral ſteaks were taken off and broiled, which were declared to be very tolerable eating by ſome, and much diſliked by others: the flavour of the meat was fiſhy, and ſtrongly impregnated with train-oil, and, in its appearance, very coarſe and black. Having ſecured our boats, we purſued our courſe, and at eight our ſoundings were fourteen fathom.

It was thick and foggy almoſt the whole of the next day (Auguſt 20th.) At three in the morning, thought we ſaw the appearance of land, the extremes of which bore N. E. and S. E by S. diſtant about four or five miles. We had light airs, and our ſoundings were fourteen fathom.

The fog continued till half paſt ten the following day, when it became tolerably clear, and we ſaw land extending from E. N. E. to S. E. by E. At noon, our obſerved latitude was 69 deg. 33 min. N. our longitude, at eight in the morning, being 195 deg. 56 min. E.; our ſoundings were thirteen fathom, and we had but little wind. At four in the afternoon, the extremes bore E. by N. and S. by W. our diſtance off ſhore being ſix or ſeven leagues. At eight, we found a ſmall ſet of the water from the N. N. E. and at twelve we had light airs and fair weather.

At four the next morning (Auguſt 22d), the extremes of the land in ſight bore from S. 10 deg. W. to N. 73 deg. E. our diſtance from the ſhore about eight or nine leagues. It ſoon after became thick and foggy, and continued ſo the remaining part of the day. At eight, our ſoundings were ſeventeen fathom and a half, with a ſandy bottom, our courſe being W. the wind S. S. W. At noon, we had nineteen fathom, the bottom a hard mud, and at eight in the evening they increaſed to twenty-one fathom. In the courſe of the day, we obſerved many flocks of ſmall birds flying to the ſouthward, and ſaw a great number of ducks. At twelve, we heard a noiſe reſembling that of a ſurf breaking over rocks; we immediately wore ſhip and ſtood off to the E. S. E. our depth of water being twenty-two fathom. The winds throughout the day were very light and variable.

In the morning we had light breezes and thick foggy weather, and at half paſt one paſt ſome drift ice. At eight we had twenty-two fathom, and at noon our courſe was W. S. W. the wind N. At four in the afternoon the fog cleared away, but the weather was cloudy, and we had ſeveral ſhowers of ſnow; the thermometer varying from 42 ½ deg. to 35 deg. At twelve our ſoundings increaſed to twenty-five fathom.

We had open cloudy weather the next day (Aug. 24th), with freſh breezes from the N. W. our courſe as yeſterday. At eight our depth of water was twenty fathom, with a ſandy bottom, and our longitude about 190 deg. 25 min. E. At noon our latitude was 69 deg. 30 min. N. and in the afternoon we had ſeveral ſhowers of ſnow, and obſerved a ſwell from the W. N. W. At eight we had thirty fathoms.

At three in the morning, we tacked and ſtood S. by W. the wind W. by S. and at five ſaw the appearance of land to the S. E. which we immediately ſtood for, but ſoon after diſcovered it to be only a fog-bank, ſo reſumed our former courſe. At ſix the wind ſhifted to the S. W. our courſe being W. N. W. and at eight we got twenty-nine fathoms, with a muddy bottom. In the afternoon we had freſh gales from the W. S. W. and at ſix paſſed ſome drift wood. At eight our ſoundings were twenty-eight fathoms.

The wind ſhifted in the courſe of the night to N. N. W. our courſe being W. and W. by S. At ſix (Aug. 26th), we had ſome land birds about the ſhip, and at eight ſaw the ice from the maſt-head extending from N. by E. to N. W. ½ W. our longitude being 184 deg. 2 min. E. At noon our latitude was 69 deg. 38 min. N. the ice then bearing from N. E. by N. to N. by W. diſtant about four or five miles; and our courſe being W. by S. with the wind at N. N. W. At ſix, the wind coming round to the ſouth-eaſtward, we hauled off the ice, being not more than half a mile diſtant from it. At eight we tacked ſhip, and ſtood to the N. E. the extremes of the ice bearing N. N. E. and S. ½ W. our ſoundings being twenty-ſix fathoms.

At four in the morning (Aug. 27th), we tacked and ſtood to the S. W. having freſh gales from the S. S. E. attended with rain. At one in the afternoon, ſaw the ice from W. S. W. to N. W. our ſoundings being twenty-ſix fathom, with a muddy bottom. At half paſt five it came on thick and foggy, and ſoon after we had rain. We alſo ſaw ſeveral morſes or ſea-horſes, and many ſmall birds, which we ſuppoſed to be the *tringa lobata* of Linnæus. At ſeven, being near the ice, our boats were got out to make another attack upon the ſea-horſes, which though not very palatable, were ſtill preferable to ſalt proviſions, and they beſides afforded us a good ſtock of blubber, which we afterwards found of ſingular ſervice to us, as our ſtock of oil muſt otherwiſe have been all exhauſted, without the poſſibility of renewing it. They returned at nine, but were obliged to leave the major part of what they had killed behind, as it came on foggy, and they were apprehenſive of loſing the ſhips, as well as being encloſed by the ice. At twelve we tacked and ſtood to the weſtward, the wind being N. N. W. and the weather thick and foggy.

The next morning at five, we tacked ſhip, and purſued a N. ½ W. courſe, having light breezes from the W. by N. and much looſe ice about. From eight till noon it was nearly calm, during which time moſt of our boats were employed in killing ſea-horſes, which were in this part numerous beyond imagination. We obſerved many of their young, which they are remarkably careful of, and will defend to the utmoſt: upon the leaſt appearance of danger they embrace them with their fore feet, and plunge into the water. Our people killed ſeveral of them, but the old ones would not quit the boats till they were deſtroyed alſo; and once they were very near ſtaving the Diſcovery's ſmall cutter with their enormous teeth. At four the ice extended from N. to S. S. W. our courſe being S. with the wind E. S. E. At half paſt five we tacked, and ſtood to to the N. E. not being able to clear the ice upon the other tack, the eaſtern extremity of which bore S. by W. diſtant about one mile, and extended a conſiderable diſtance to the S. W. At ſeven it blew pretty freſh, and at eight we got down top-gallant-yards, and reefed our top-ſails; our ſoundings were twenty-ſix fathom. At twelve our courſe was E. N. E the ice, which we were very near, bearing N. W. The thermometer to-day was as low as 31 deg.

The next day (Aug. 29th), we had dark cloudy weather, with moderate gales from the W. N. W. and N. W. our courſe being S. W. At four the ice bore from N. to W. by S. and at eight there fell ſeveral ſhowers of ſmall rain, attended with frequent thick fogs. At nine, our longitude being nearly 186 deg. 18 min. E. we ſaw land, being part of the continent of Aſia, bearing from S. S. W. to S. W. our ſoundings at this time were twenty-three fathoms, with a ſandy bottom. At noon, our latitude by account was 68 deg. 46 min. N. when the extremes of the land bore from S. 55 deg. E. five miles diſtant, to N. 85 deg. W. three leagues diſtant, the neareſt part bearing S. by W. about two miles, our ſoundings being eight fathom. We ſoon after tacked, and ſtood to the N. N.E. the wind N. W. The land to the eaſtward was low and level, that behind it moderately high, with little or no ſnow, but the whole as barren as can well be conceived: we did not obſerve the leaſt ice upon or near the ſhore. At two we tacked and ſtood W. S. W. ½ W. A tfour we had ſhowers of ſmall rain, our ſoundings were fifteen, and at five twelve fathom, thoms. At ſix tacked again, and proceeded in a N. E. by N. direction, the extremes of the land bearing S. E. and W. S. W. our diſtance off ſhore about three miles. At ten we brought-to, main-top-ſail to the maſt, for the night.

At two the next morning (Aug. 30th), we bore away and made ſail, our courſe E. the wind N. N. W. the weather dark and gloomy, with continued ſhowers of ſnow. At eight, our ſoundings were twenty fathoms, and at ten ſaw the land bearing S. S. W. ½ W. At eleven, the weather being clearer, we ſaw the extremes of it, which bore S. E. by E. and W. by N. our ſoundings regularly decreaſing as we approached it, from twenty to ten fathoms, the neareſt part being about three miles diſtant. It was of a very moderate elevation, and almoſt entirely covered with ſnow, which had fallen in the courſe of the day. We ſoon after altered our courſe to S. E. and at noon the land extended from W. ½ N. to E. S. E.

our ſoundings fourteen fathoms. At one in the afternoon our courſe was N. E. by E. the wind N. by W. At four our depth of water was fifteen fathom, and at ſix it ſhoaled to ten, on which account we hauled off. At eight the extremes bore W. S. W. ¾ W. and S. S. E. ½ E. the neareſt part being about ſix miles diſtant. At half paſt eleven we hauled the wind, and ſtood off for the night, our courſe being N. E. the wind N. N. W.

We bore away again to E. N. E. at two in the morning, and at four the land bore S. E. by E. and. S. W. by W. our diſtance from the neareſt part being four leagues. At ſix we bore away to E. by S. and at eight we had twenty-two fathom; the eaſtern extreme appeared like an iſland, but we afterwards found that it was connected with the main by low land, and projected conſiderably from it. This part captain Cook called Eaſt Cape. At noon it was hazy and cloudy over the land; our latitude obſerved was 67 deg.

38 min. N. At four the eaſtermoſt land in ſight bore S. 9 leagues diſtant, and the Eaſt Cape N. 80 deg. W. three leagues. At half paſt five ſaw more land bearing S. 77 deg. E. ſo hauled farther off, our ſoundings being twelve fathom. At twelve it became ſqually with ſhowers of ſleet, our depth of water being thirteen fathom. In the courſe of the day we ſaw great numbers of brown ſheerwaters, and ſome puffins and ſea parrots.

The next day (Sept. 1ſt.) we had open cloudy weather, with ſlight ſhowers of ſleet. At half paſt two in the morning, we tacked and ſtood N. E. by E. At ſix we obſerved large flocks of birds flying paſt us, and at eight our ſoundings were ſixteen fathom, with a black ſandy bottom, the extremes of the land bearing S. E. by E. and S. W. our diſtance from ſhore being between three and four leagues. At four in the afternoon we were within ſeven miles of the land, which was moderately high and level, and without thoſe irregular ſummits ſo frequent on the American coaſt; we did not however ſee the leaſt appearance of trees.

Early the next morning we bore away to E. by N. the wind N. W. by N. and at four we had freſh breezes, with frequent ſhowers of ſnow. At ſix, we ſaw ſome diſtant land to the eaſtward, appearing like an iſland, which bore S. E. ¼ E. We had many whales about, and variety of ſea-birds, ſuch as ſheerwaters, fulmars, arctic and other gulls, and numbers of the ſcalloped-toad ſandpipers (*tringa lobata*, Lin.) Our obſerved latitude was 66 deg. 40 min. N. and our ſoundings twenty-one fathom. At three in the afternoon, we ſaw more land, bearing S. 72 deg. E. and at ten were ſtanding round the eaſtermoſt part of the continent, near the ſpot we anchored off on the 10th of Auguſt, our courſe E. S. E. Part of the fore and the whole of the afternoon were very pleaſant: the land, as we proceeded farther to the ſouthward, became in general more lofty and elevated, but ſtill very regular, with many low and long extended plains, which were well clothed with herbs and plants of various kinds.

Our weather the next day was clear and pleaſant, with a fine breeze from the N. W. our courſe being S. S. W. At eight we were abreaſt of the place we ſtopped at on Auguſt the 10th, the north point of the road bearing S. 64 deg. W. four miles diſtant. The wind being fair, captain Cook purſued his courſe, and continued to trace the land, which now made a conſiderable bend to the ſouth-weſtward. By the help of our glaſſes, we ſaw two or three towns as we paſſed along, but none of the inhabitants would venture out to us. We had many birds about, and a hawk flew by the ſhips. Our latitude to-day was 65 deg. 31 min. N. At two in the afternoon, we obſerved a ſmall drain of the tide from the N. E. At four, the two points of the road bore N. 10 deg. E. and N. 40 deg. W. and the ſouthermoſt land in ſight S. 22 deg. W. At twelve, we hauled the wind, our courſe E. by N.

In the morning early (September 4th), we bore away again as uſual, our courſe being N. W. by W. At eight, we had no ground at twenty-five fathom; but at eleven ſhoaled from twelve to ſeven fathom, and ſoon after to five; we directly hauled off, and our ſoundings became gradually deeper. At noon, we ſaw a ſpit of low land, running off from the ſouthern extreme, which bore S. by W. As we approached this, our depth of water became leſs. Our latitude was 64 deg. 39 min. N. At three in the afternoon, we bore away for the American continent, our courſe S. S. E. the wind N. by W. and N. N. W. At four, the ſouthermoſt land in ſight bore S. 46 deg. W. and at ſix S. 51 deg. W. At nine, we hauled the wind, our courſe being E. by N.

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

DIRECTIONS for placing the CUTS.

VOL. I.

Chart of the Diſcoveries, &c, Page 1
View of the Iſland of Deſolation 12
—— Market-place at Amſterdam 72
—— a Hut and Plantation at Amſterdam 95
Canoe of the friendly Iſlands 110
Man of O'taheite in a mourning Dreſs 130
View in the Iſland of O'nechow 175
Native of King George's Sound 191
—— Sandwich Sound 236

VOL II.

Hut on the weſt coaſt of America 11
Man of U'nalaſchka 45
Woman of U'nalaſchka 46
View of Karaka-cooah Bay in O'whyhee 140
Man of Sandwich Iſlands 150
Woman of Sandwich Iſlands 151
View of the Huts and a Boat-houſe at O'whyhee 165
Double Canoe of Sandwich Iſlands 177
View of a Morai at O'whyhee 180
— in O'whyhee with one of the Prieſt's Houſes 182
Kamtſchadale travelling in Winter 207
View of the Town of St. Peter and St. Paul 237
Woman of Kamtſchatka 238